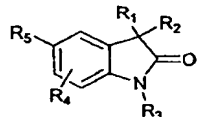


PCT

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
International Bureau

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification ⁷ : A61K 45/06, A61P 15/18 // A61K 31/57, 31:40, 31:565		A1	(11) International Publication Number: WO 00/66167
			(43) International Publication Date: 9 November 2000 (09.11.00)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/US00/11834		TEGLEY, Christopher, M. [US/US]; 478 Thunderhead Street, Thousand Oaks, CA 91360 (US). FENSOME, Andrew [GB/US]; 779 Trephanny Lane, Wayne, PA 19087 (US). MILLER, Lori, L. [US/US]; 72 Meadowbrook Road, Wayne, PA 19087 (US). ULLRICH, John, W. [US/US]; 317 Misty Autumn Drive, Exton, PA 19341 (US). BENDER, Reinhold, H., W. [US/US]; 101 Oakwood Lane, Valley Forge, PA 19481 (US). ZHANG, Puwen [CN/US]; 7004 Oriole Court, Audubon, PA 19403 (US). WROBEL, Jay, E. [US/US]; 15 Rosetree Lane, Lawrenceville, NJ 08648 (US). EDWARDS, James, P. [US/US]; 8723 Hesby Court, San Diego, CA 92129 (US). (74) Agents: KODROFF, Cathy, A. et al.; Howson and Howson, Spring House Corporate Center, P.O. Box 457, Spring House, PA 19477 (US). (81) Designated States: AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG). Published With international search report. Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.	
(22) International Filing Date: 1 May 2000 (01.05.00)			
(30) Priority Data: 60/183,052 4 May 1999 (04.05.99) US 09/552,358 19 April 2000 (19.04.00) US			
(63) Related by Continuation (CON) or Continuation-in-Part (CIP) to Earlier Application US 09/552,358 (CON) Filed on 19 April 2000 (19.04.00)			
(71) Applicants (for all designated States except US): AMERICAN HOME PRODUCTS CORPORATION [US/US]; Five Giralda Farms, Madison, NJ 07840 (US). LIGAND PHARMACEUTICALS, INC. [US/US]; 10275 Science Center Drive, San Diego, CA 92121 (US).			
(72) Inventors; and (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): GRUBB, Gary, S. [US/US]; 825 Briarwood Road, Newtown Square, PA 19073 (US). ZHI, Lin [CN/US]; 7794 Roan Road, San Diego, CA 92129 (US). JONES, Todd, K. [US/US]; 546 Marview Drive, Solana Beach, CA 92075 (US).			
(54) Title: CONTRACEPTIVE COMPOSITIONS CONTAINING INDOLENE DERIVATIVES AND PROGESTATIONAL AGENTS			
<div style="text-align: center;">  </div> <div style="text-align: right;">(1)</div>			
(57) Abstract			
<p>This invention relates to cyclic combination therapies and regimens utilizing substituted indoline derivative compounds which are antagonists of the progesterone receptor having general structure (1), wherein R¹ and R² may be single substituents or fused to form spirocyclic rings, in combination with progestins, estrogens, or both. These methods of treatment may be used for contraception or for the treatment and/or prevention of secondary amenorrhea, dysfunctional bleeding, uterine leiomyomata, endometriosis; polycystic ovary syndrome, carcinomas and adenocarcinomas of the endometrium, ovary, breast, colon, prostate, or minimization of side effects or cyclic menstrual bleeding. Additional uses of the invention include stimulation of food intake.</p>			

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece		Republic of Macedonia	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	ML	Mali	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MN	Mongolia	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MR	Mauritania	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MW	Malawi	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	MX	Mexico	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NE	Niger	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NL	Netherlands	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NO	Norway	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's	NZ	New Zealand		
CM	Cameroon		Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CN	China	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CU	Cuba	KZ	Kazakstan	RO	Romania		
CZ	Czech Republic	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
DE	Germany	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DK	Denmark	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
EE	Estonia	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		

- 1 -

CONTRACEPTIVE COMPOSITIONS CONTAINING INDOLINE DERIVATIVES AND PROGESTATIONAL AGENTS

Field of the Invention

5 This invention relates to regimens of administering compounds which are antagonists of the progesterone receptor in combination with a progestin, an estrogen, or both.

Background of the Invention

10 Intracellular receptors (IR) form a class of structurally related gene regulators known as "ligand dependent transcription factors" (R. M. Evans, *Science*, **240**, 889, 1988). The steroid receptor family is a subset of the IR family, including progesterone receptor (PR), estrogen receptor (ER), androgen receptor (AR), glucocorticoid receptor (GR), and mineralocorticoid receptor (MR).

15 The natural hormone, or ligand, for the PR is the steroid progesterone, but synthetic compounds, such as medroxyprogesterone acetate or levonorgestrel, have been made which also serve as ligands. Once a ligand is present in the fluid surrounding a cell, it passes through the membrane *via* passive diffusion, and binds to the IR to create a receptor/ligand complex. This complex binds to specific gene
20 promoters present in the cell's DNA. Once bound to the DNA the complex modulates the production of mRNA and protein encoded by that gene.

 A compound that binds to an IR and mimics the action of the natural hormone is termed an agonist, whilst a compound which inhibits the effect of the hormone is an antagonist.

25 PR antagonists may used in contraception. In this context they may be administered alone (Ulmann, et al, *Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci.*, **261**, 248, 1995), in combination with a PR agonist (Kekkonen, et al, *Fertility and Sterility*, **60**, 610, 1993) or in combination with a partial ER antagonist such as tamoxifen (WO 96/19997 A1 July 4, 1996).

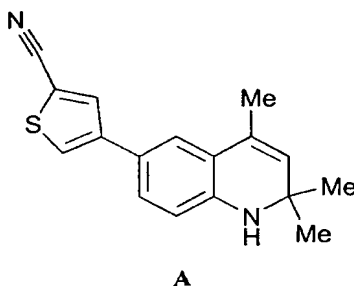
- 2 -

PR antagonists may also be useful for the treatment of hormone dependent breast cancers (Horwitz, et al, *Horm. Cancer*, 283, pub: Birkhaeuser, Boston, Mass., ed. Vedeckis) as well as uterine and ovarian cancers. PR antagonists may also be useful for the treatment of non-malignant chronic conditions such as fibroids
5 (Murphy, et al, *J. Clin. Endo. Metab.*, 76, 513, 1993) and endometriosis (Kettel, et al, *Fertility and Sterility*, 56, 402, 1991).

PR antagonists may also be useful in hormone replacement therapy for post menopausal patients in combination with a partial ER antagonist such as tamoxifen (U.S. Patent No. 5,719,136).

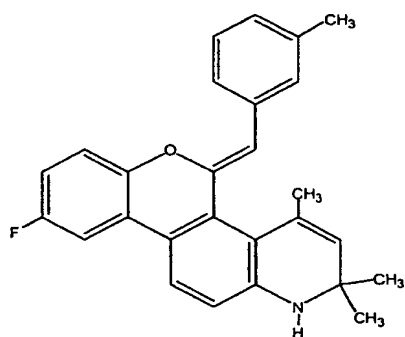
10 PR antagonists, such as mifepristone and onapristone, have been shown to be effective in a model of hormone dependent prostate cancer, which may indicate their utility in the treatment of this condition in men (Michna, et al, *Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci.*, 761, 224, 1995).

Described by Jones, et al, (U.S. Patent No. 5,688,810) is the PR antagonist
15 dihydroquinoline A.

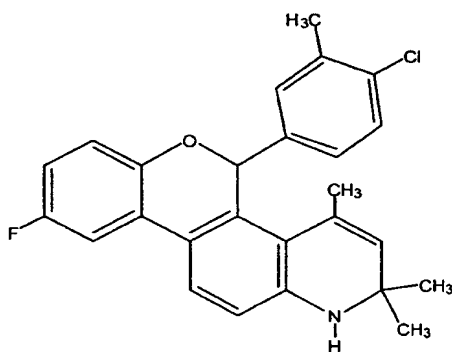


Jones, et al, described the enol ether B (U.S. Patent No. 5,693,646) as a PR
20 ligand.

- 3 -

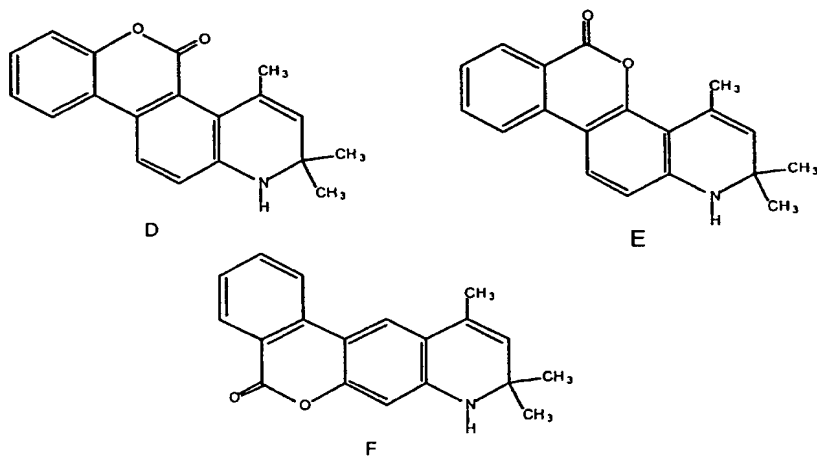
**B**

Jones, *et al*, described compound **C** (U.S. Patent No. 5,696,127) as a PR
5 ligand.

**C**

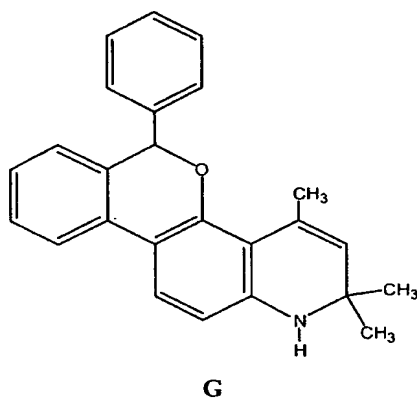
10 Zhi, *et al*, described lactones **D**, **E** and **F** as PR antagonists (J. Med.
Chem., 41, 291, 1998).

- 4 -



Zhi, *et al.*, described the ether **G** as a PR antagonist (*J. Med. Chem.*, **41**, 291, 1998).

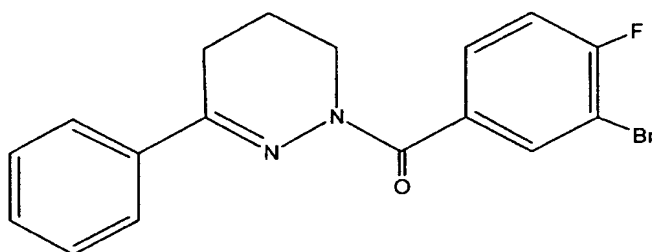
5



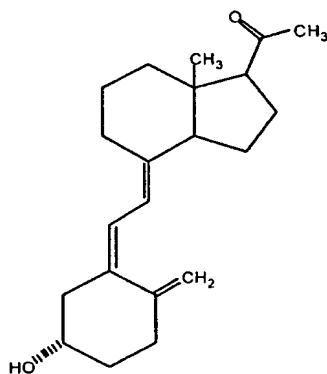
Combs, *et al.*, disclosed the amide **H** as a ligand for the PR (*J. Med. Chem.*, **38**, 4880, 1995).

10

- 5 -

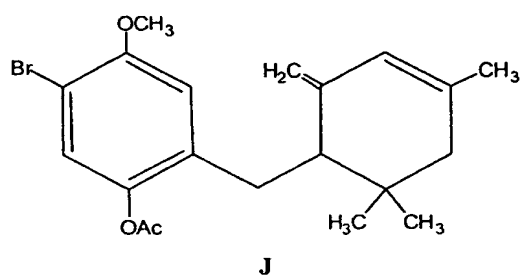
**H**

Perlman, *et. al.*, described the vitamin D analog **I** as a PR ligand (*Tet. Letters*,
5 35, 2295, 1994).

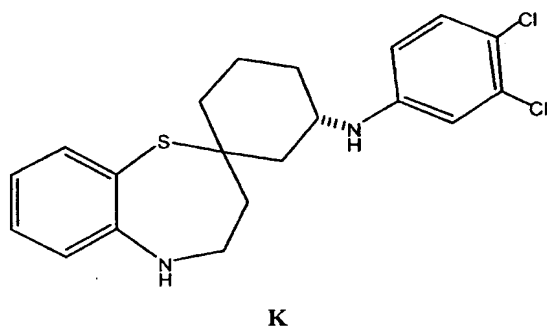
**I**

10 Hamann, *et al*, described the PR antagonist **J** (*Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci.*, 761, 383,
1995).

- 6 -

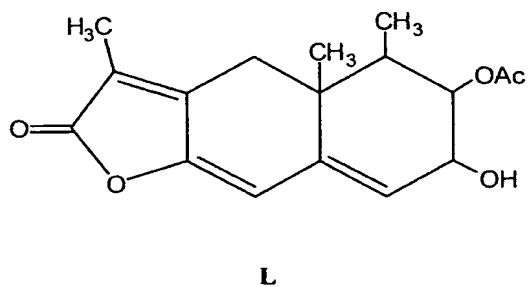


Chen, *et al*, described the PR antagonist **K** (Chen, *et al*, POI-37, 16th Int.
5 Cong. Het. Chem., Montana, 1997).



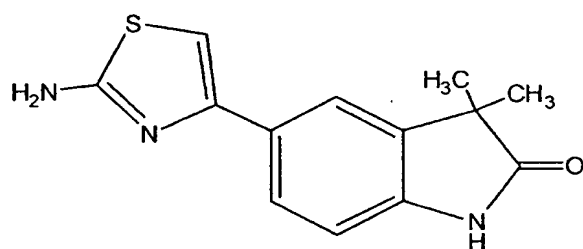
Kurihari, *et. al.*, described the PR ligand **L** (*J. Antibiotics*, 50, 360, 1997).

10



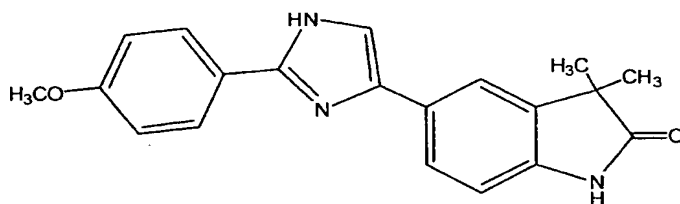
- 7 -

Kuhla, et al, disclosed the oxindole **M** as having cardiotonic activity (WO 86/03749).

**M**

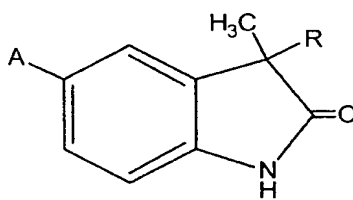
5

Weber, teaches the oxindole **N** for cardiovascular indications (WO 91/06545).

**N**

10

Fischer, et al, describe a preparation for making compounds which include the generic structure **O** (U.S. Patent No. 5,453,516).

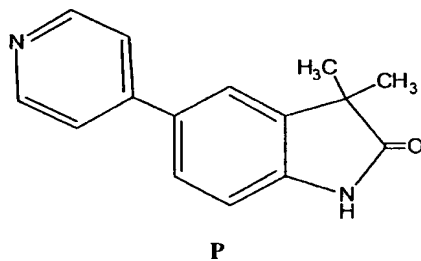
**O**

R = various

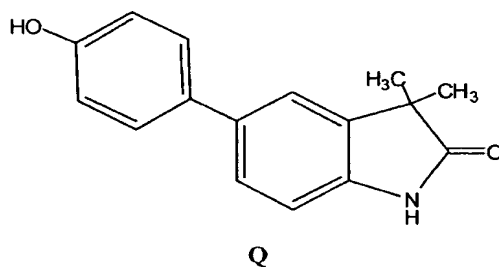
15

- 8 -

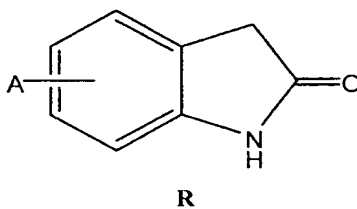
Singh, et al, described the PDE III inhibitor **P** (*J. Med. Chem.*, 37, 248, 1994).



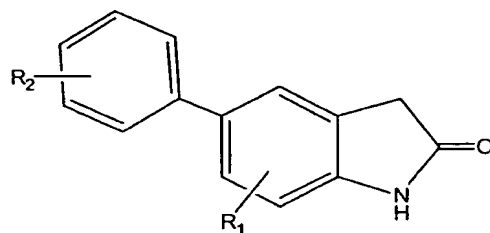
5 Andreani, et al, described the cytotoxic agent **Q** (*Acta. Pharn. Nord.*, 2, 407, 1990).



10 Binder, et al, described structure **R** which is an intermediate for preparing COX II inhibitors (WO 97/13767).



15 Walsh described the oxindole **S** as an intermediate (U.S. Patent No. 4,440,785, U.S. Patent No. 4,670,566).



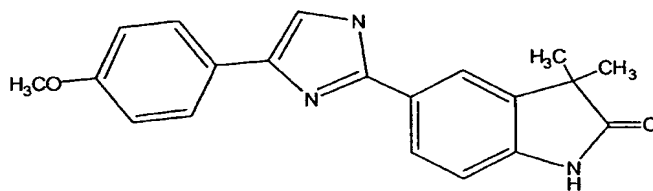
S

$$R1 = F, Cl, Br, \text{alkyl}, NH_2$$

R2 = alkyl, alkoxy, F, Cl, NH₂, CF₃

5

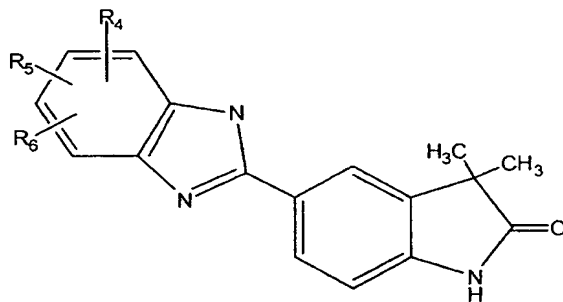
Bohm, et al, claim the oxindole T as cardiovascular agents (WO 91/06545).



T

10

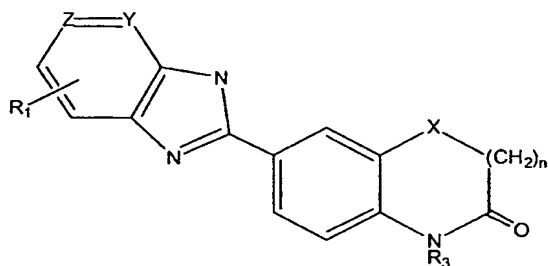
Bohm, et al, include the generic structure U (WO 91/04974).



U

- 10 -

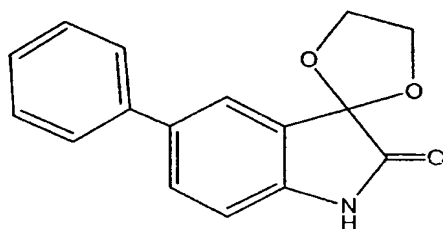
JP 63112584 A contains the generic structure V:



5

V

Boar, et al, described the dioxolane W as an intermediate for preparation of acetylcholinesterase inhibitors (WO 93/12085 A1).

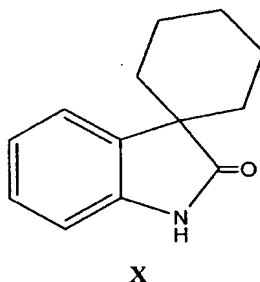


10

W

Kende, et al, described methodology for preparing 3,3-substituted oxindoles, e.g. X, that was utilized in the present invention (Synth. Commun., 12, 1, 1982).

- 11 -



U.S Patent No. 5,521,166 (Grubb) teaches cyclophasic hormonal regimens
5 comprising an antiprogestin and a progestin wherein the progestin is administered in
the alternating presence and absence of an antiprogestin. The disclosed regimens also
provide for use of an estrogen for a period of from 2-4 days to prevent breakthrough
bleeding.

10

Description of the Invention.

- 12 -

This invention provides combination therapies and dosing regimens utilizing antiprogestational agents in combination with one or more progestational agents. This invention further provides methods of treatment and dosing regimens further utilizing in combination with these antiprogestins and progestins, an estrogen, such as
5 ethinyl estradiol.

These regimens and combinations may be administered to a mammal to induce contraception or for the treatment and/or prevention of secondary amenorrhea, dysfunctional bleeding, uterine leiomyomata, endometriosis; polycystic ovary syndrome, carcinomas and adenocarcinomas of the endometrium, ovary, breast,
10 colon, prostate. Additional uses of the invention include stimulation of food intake. The uses herein for the treatment and/or prevention of the conditions or diseases described above includes the continuous administration or periodic discontinuation of administration of the invention to allow for minimization of effect dose or minimization of side effects or cyclic menstrual bleeding.

15 The use of this invention for contraception includes administration, preferably orally, to a female of child bearing age an antiprogestin in combination with an estrogen or progestin or both. These administration regimens are preferably carried out over 28 consecutive days, with a terminal portion of the cycle containing administration of no progestins, estrogens or anti-progestins.

20 The progestins of these combinations may be administered alone or in combination with an estrogen for the first 14-24 days of the cycle, the progestins being administered at a dosage range equal in progestational activity to about 35 µg to about 150 µg levonorgestrel per day, preferably equal in activity to from about 35 µg to about 100 µg levonorgestrel per day. An antiprogestin may then be administered
25 alone or in combination with an estrogen for a period of 1 to 11 days to begin on any cycle day between day 14 and 24. The anti-progestin in these combinations may be administered at a dose of from about 2µg to about 50 µg per day and the estrogen may be administered at a dose of from about 10 µg to about 35 µg per day. In an oral

- 13 -

administration, a package or kit containing 28 tablets will include a placebo tablet on those days when the antiprogestin or progestin or estrogen is not administered.

In a preferred embodiment of this invention, the progestins of this invention may be administered alone or in combination with estrogen for the initial 18 to 21
5 days of a 28-day cycle, followed by administration of an antiprogestin, alone or in combination with an estrogen, for from 1 to 7 days.

The estrogen to be used in the combinations and formulations of this invention is preferably ethinyl estradiol.

Progestational agents useful with this invention include, but are not limited to,
10 levonorgestrel, norgestrel, desogestrel, 3-ketodesogestrel, norethindrone, gestodene, norethindrone acetate, norgestimate, osaterone, cyproterone acetate, trimegestone, dienogest, drospirenone, nomegestrol, or (17-deacetyl)norgestimate. Among the preferred progestins for use in the combinations of this invention are levonorgestrel, gestodene and trimegestone.

15 Examples of orally administered regimens of this invention over a 28 day cycle include administration of a progestational agent solely for the first 21 days at a daily dose equal in progestational activity to from about 35 to about 100 μg of levonorgestrel. An antiprogestin compound of this invention may then be administered at a daily dose of from about 2 to 50 mg from day 22 to day 24,
20 followed by no administration or administration of a placebo for days 25 to 28. It is most preferred that the daily dosages of each relevant active ingredient be incorporated into a combined, single daily dosage unit, totaling 28 daily units per 28-day cycle.

In another regimen, a progestational agent may be coadministered for the first
25 21 days at a daily dose equal in progestational activity to from about 35 to about 150 μg levonorgestrel, preferably equal in activity to from about 35 to about 100 μg levonorgestrel, with an estrogen, such as ethinyl estradiol, at a daily dose range of from about 10 to about 35 μg . This may be followed as described above with an antiprogestin administered at a daily dose of from about 2 to 50 mg from day 22 to

- 14 -

day 24, followed by no administration or administration of a placebo for days 25 to 28.

Still another regimen within the scope of this invention will include coadministration from days 1 to 21 of a progestational agent, the progestational agent, preferably levonorgestrel, being administered at a daily dose equal in progestational activity to from about 35 to about 100 μg levonorgestrel, and an estrogen, such as ethinyl estradiol, at a daily dose range of from about 10 to about 35 μg . This will be followed on days 22 to 24 by coadministration of an antiprogestin (2 to 50 mg/day) and an estrogen, such as ethinyl estradiol, at a daily dose of from about 10 to about 35 μg . From day 25 to day 28, this regimen may be followed by no administration or administration of a placebo.

This invention also kits or packages of pharmaceutical formulations designed for use in the regimens described herein. These kits are preferably designed for daily oral administration over a 28-day cycle, preferably for one oral administration per day, and organized so as to indicate a single oral formulation or combination of oral formulations to be taken on each day of the 28-day cycle. Preferably each kit will include oral tablets to be taken on each the days specified, preferably one oral tablet will contain each of the combined daily dosages indicated.

According to the regimens described above, one 28-day kit may comprise:

- a) an initial phase of from 14 to 21 daily dosage units of a progestational agent equal in progestational activity to about 35 to about 150 μg levonorgestrel, preferably equal in progestational activity to about 35 to about 100 μg levonorgestrel;
- b) a second phase of from 1 to 11 daily dosage units of an antiprogestin compound of this invention, each daily dosage unit containing an antiprogestin compound at a daily dosage of from about 2 to 50 mg; and
- c) optionally, a third phase of an orally and pharmaceutically acceptable placebo for the remaining days of the cycle in which no antiprogestin, progestin or estrogen is administered.

- 15 -

A preferred embodiment of this kit may comprise:

a) an initial phase of 21 daily dosage units of a progestational agent equal in progestational activity to about 35 to about 150 µg levonorgestrel, preferably equal in progestational activity to about 35 to about 100 µg levonorgestrel;

5 b) a second phase of 3 daily dosage units for days 22 to 24 of an antiprogesterin compound of this invention, each daily dosage unit containing an antiprogesterin compound at a daily dosage of from about 2 to 50 mg; and

c) optionally, a third phase of 4 daily units of an orally and pharmaceutically acceptable placebo for each of days 25 to 28.

10 Another 28-day cycle packaging regimen or kit of this invention comprises:

a) a first phase of from 18 to 21 daily dosage units of a progestational agent equal in progestational activity to about 35 to about 150 µg levonorgestrel, preferably equal in activity to from about 35 to about 100 µg levonorgestrel, and, as an estrogen, ethinyl estradiol at a daily dose range of from about 10 to about 35 µg; and

15 b) a second phase of from 1 to 7 daily dosage units of an antiprogesterin of this invention at a daily dose of from about 2 to 50 mg; and

c) optionally, an orally and pharmaceutically acceptable placebo for each of the remaining 0-9 days in the 28-day cycle in which no progestational agent, estrogen or antiprogesterin is administered.

20 A preferred embodiment of the kit described above may comprise:

a) a first phase of 21 daily dosage units of a progestational agent equal in progestational activity to about 35 to about 150 µg levonorgestrel, preferably equal in activity to from about 35 to about 100 µg levonorgestrel, and, as an estrogen, ethinyl estradiol at a daily dose range of from about 10 to about 35 µg; and

25 b) a second phase of 3 daily dosage units for days 22 to 24 of an antiprogesterin administered at a daily dose of from about 2 to 50 mg; and

c) optionally, a third phase of 4 daily dose units of an orally and pharmaceutically acceptable placebo for each of days 25 to 28.

- 16 -

A further 28-day packaged regimen or kit of this invention comprises:

- a) a first phase of from 18 to 21 daily dosage units, each containing a progestational agent of this invention at a daily dose equal in progestational activity to about 35 to about 150 µg levonorgestrel, preferably equal in activity to from about 35 to about 100 µg levonorgestrel, and ethinyl estradiol at a daily dose range of from about 10 to about 35 µg;
- b) a second phase of from 1 to 7 daily dose units, each daily dose unit containing an antiprogestin of this invention at a concentration of from 2 to 50 mg; and ethinyl estradiol at a concentration of from about 10 to about 35 µg; and
- c) optionally, an orally and pharmaceutically acceptable placebo for each of the remaining 0-9 days in the 28-day cycle in which no progestational agent, estrogen or antiprogestin is administered.

A preferred embodiment of the package or kit just described comprises:

- a) a first phase of 21 daily dosage units, each containing a progestational agent of this invention at a daily dose equal in progestational activity to about 35 to about 150 µg levonorgestrel, preferably from about 35 to about 100 µg levonorgestrel, and ethinyl estradiol at a daily dose range of from about 10 to about 35 µg;
- b) a second phase of 3 daily dose units for days 22 to 24, each dose unit containing an antiprogestin of this invention at a concentration of from 2 to 50 mg; and ethinyl estradiol at a concentration of from about 10 to about 35 µg; and
- c) optionally, a third phase of 4 daily units of an orally and pharmaceutically acceptable placebo for each of days 25 to 28.

In each of the regimens and kits just described, it is preferred that the daily dosage of each pharmaceutically active component of the regimen remain fixed in each particular phase in which it is administered. It is also understood that the daily dose units described are to be administered in the order described, with the first phase followed in order by the second and third phases. To help facilitate compliance with each regimen, it is also preferred that the kits contain the placebo described for the

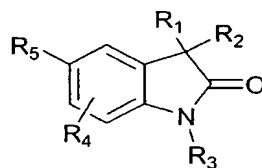
- 17 -

final days of the cycle. It is further preferred that each package or kit comprise a pharmaceutically acceptable package having indicators for each day of the 28-day cycle, such as a labeled blister package or dial dispenser packages known in the art.

In this disclosure, the terms anti-progestational agents, anti-progestins and
 5 progesterone receptor antagonists are understood to be synonymous. Similarly, progestins, progestational agents and progesterone receptor agonists are understood to refer to compounds of the same activity.

These dosage regimens may be adjusted to provide the optimal therapeutic response. For example, several divided doses of each component may be
 10 administered daily or the dose may be proportionally increased or reduced as indicated by the exigencies of the therapeutic situation. In the descriptions herein, reference to a daily dosage unit may also include divided units which are administered over the course of each day of the cycle contemplated.

Compounds of this invention which may be used as the anti-progestational
 15 agents in the kits, methods and regimens herein are those of the Formula 1:



1

wherein:

20 R_1 and R_2 are chosen independently from H, alkyl, substituted alkyl; OH; O(alkyl); O(substituted alkyl); OAc; aryl; optionally substituted aryl; heteroaryl; optionally substituted heteroaryl; alkylaryl; alkylheteroaryl; 1-propynyl; or 3-propynyl;

25 or R_1 and R_2 are joined to form a ring comprising one of the following:
 $-\text{CH}_2(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}_2-$; $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CMe}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$; $-\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{CH}_2-$; $\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{O}$;

- 18 -

-CH₂CH₂OCH₂CH₂-; or -CH₂CH₂N(H or alkyl)CH₂CH₂-;

or R₁ and R₂ comprise a double bond to CMe₂, C(cycloalkyl), O, or C(cyloether);

n is an integer from 0 to 5;

5 m is an integer from 1 to 4;

p is an integer from 1 to 4;

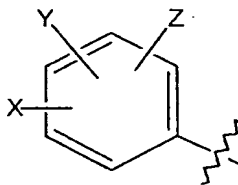
R₃ is selected from H, OH, NH₂, C₁ to C₆ alkyl, substituted C₁ to C₆ alkyl, C₃ to C₆ alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, or COR^A;

10 R^A is selected from H, C₁ to C₃ alkyl, substituted C₁ to C₃ alkyl, C₁ to C₃ alkoxy, substituted C₁ to C₃ alkoxy, C₁ to C₃ aminoalkyl, or substituted C₁ to C₃ aminoalkyl;

R₄ is selected from H, halogen, CN, NH₂, C₁ to C₆ alkyl, substituted C₁ to C₆ alkyl, C₁ to C₆ alkoxy, substituted C₁ to C₆ alkoxy, C₁ to C₆ aminoalkyl, or substituted C₁ to C₆ aminoalkyl;

15 R⁵ is selected from the groups a), b) or c):

a) R⁵ is a trisubstituted benzene ring containing the substituents X, Y and Z as shown below:



wherein:

20

X is selected from the group of halogen, OH, CN, C₁ to C₃ alkyl, substituted C₁ to C₃ alkyl, C₁ to C₃ alkoxy, substituted C₁ to C₃ alkoxy, C₁ to C₃ thioalkyl, substituted C₁ to C₃ thioalkyl, S(O)alkyl, S(O)₂alkyl, C₁ to C₃ aminoalkyl, substituted C₁ to C₃ aminoalkyl, NO₂, C₁ to C₃ perfluoroalkyl, 5 or 6 membered heterocyclic ring
 25 containing 1 to 3 heteroatoms, COR^B, OCOR^B, or NR^CCOR^B;

- 19 -

R^B is H, C_1 to C_3 alkyl, substituted C_1 to C_3 alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, C_1 to C_3 alkoxy, substituted C_1 to C_3 alkoxy, C_1 to C_3 aminoalkyl, or substituted C_1 to C_3 aminoalkyl;

R^C is H, C_1 to C_3 alkyl, or substituted C_1 to C_3 alkyl;

5 Y and Z are independently selected from H, halogen, CN, NO_2 , C_1 to C_3 alkoxy, C_1 to C_3 alkyl, or C_1 to C_3 thioalkyl;

or

10 b) R^5 is a five or six membered heterocyclic ring with 1, 2, or 3 heteroatoms selected from O, S, SO, SO_2 or NR^6 and containing one or two independent substituents from the group of H, halogen, CN, NO_2 and C_1 to C_3 alkyl, C_1 to C_3 alkoxy, C_1 to C_3 aminoalkyl, COR^D , or $NR^E COR^D$;

R^D is H, C_1 to C_3 alkyl, substituted C_1 to C_3 alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, C_1 to C_3 alkoxy, substituted C_1 to C_3 alkoxy, C_1 to C_3 aminoalkyl, or substituted C_1 to C_3 aminoalkyl;

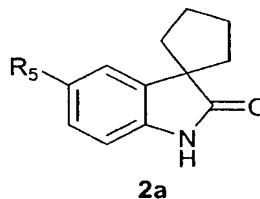
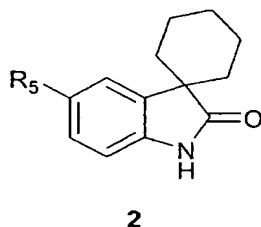
15 R^E is H, C_1 to C_3 alkyl, or substituted C_1 to C_3 alkyl;

R^6 is H, or C_1 to C_3 alkyl; or

c) R^5 is an indol-4-yl, indol-7-yl or benzo-2-thiophene moiety, the moiety being optionally substituted by from 1 to 3 substituents selected from halogen, lower alkyl, CN, NO_2 , lower alkoxy, or CF_3 ;

20 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

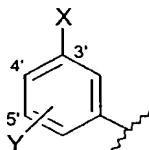
A preferred set of compounds of this invention is depicted by structure 2, 2a:



- 20 -

wherein:

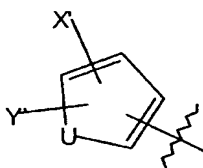
R^5 is a disubstituted benzene ring containing the substituents X and Y as shown below:



- 5 X is taken from the group of halogen, CN, C_1 to C_3 alkoxy, C_1 to C_3 alkyl, NO_2 , C_1 to C_3 perfluoroalkyl, 5 membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 3 heteroatoms or C_1 to C_3 thioalkoxy;

- Y is a substituent on the 4' or 5' position of the disubstituted benzene ring selected from the group of H, halogen, CN, NO_2 , C_1 to C_3 alkoxy, C_1 to C_4 alkyl, or C_1 to C_3 thioalkyl;
- 10 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

Another preferred group of this invention comprises compounds of formulas 2 and 2a wherein R^5 is a five membered ring with the structure shown below:



15

U is O, S, or NR^6 ,

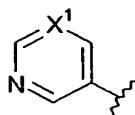
R^6 is H, or C_1 to C_3 alkyl, C_1 to C_4 CO_2 alkyl,

X' is selected from the group of halogen, CN, NO_2 , C_1 to C_3 alkyl or C_1 to C_3 alkoxy; with a proviso that, when X' is CN, U is not NR^6 ;

- 20 Y' is selected from H, F, CN, NO_2 or C_1 to C_4 alkyl;
- or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

- 21 -

Another preferred group of formulas 2 and 2a are those in which R⁵ is a six membered ring with the structure shown



wherein :

- 5 X¹ is N or CX²,
 X² is halogen, CN or NO₂;
or pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof

The compounds of this invention may contain an asymmetric carbon atom and some of the compounds of this invention may contain one or more asymmetric centers and may thus give rise to optical isomers and diastereomers. While shown
10 without respect to stereochemistry in Formula 1 and 2 the present invention includes such optical isomers and diastereomers; as well as the racemic and resolved, enantiomerically pure R and S stereoisomers; as well as other mixtures of the R and S stereoisomers and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

15 The term "alkyl" is used herein to refer to both straight- and branched-chain saturated aliphatic hydrocarbon groups having 1 to 8 carbon atoms; "alkenyl" is intended to include both straight- and branched-chain alkyl group with 1 or 2 carbon-carbon double bonds and containing 2 to 8 carbon atoms; "alkynyl" group is intended to cover both straight- and branched-chain alkyl group with at least 1 or 2
20 carbon-carbon triple bonds and containing 2 to 8 carbon atoms.

The terms "substituted alkyl", "substituted alkenyl", and "substituted alkynyl" refer to alkyl, alkenyl, and alkynyl as just described having one or more substituents from the group including halogen, CN, OH, NO₂, amino, aryl, heterocyclic, substituted aryl, substituted heterocyclic, alkoxy, aryloxy, substituted
25 alkyloxy, alkylcarbonyl, alkylcarboxy, alkylamino, arylthio. These substituents may be attached to any carbon of alkyl, alkenyl, or alkynyl group provided that the attachment constitutes a stable chemical moiety.

The term "aryl" is used herein to refer to an aromatic system which may be a single ring or multiple aromatic rings fused or linked together as such that at least one part of the fused or linked rings forms the conjugated aromatic system. The aryl groups include, but are not limited to, phenyl, naphthyl, biphenyl, anthryl, tetrahydronaphthyl, phenanthryl.

The term "substituted aryl" refers to aryl as just defined having 1 to 4 substituents from the group including halogen, CN, OH, NO₂, amino, alkyl, cycloalkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxy, aryloxy, substituted alkoxy, alkylcarbonyl, alkylcarboxy, alkylamino, or arylthio.

The term "heterocyclic" is used herein to describe a stable 4- to 7-membered monocyclic or a stable multicyclic heterocyclic ring which is saturated, partially unsaturated, or unsaturated, and which consists of carbon atoms and from one to four heteroatoms selected from the group including N, O, and S atoms. The N and S atoms may be oxidized. The heterocyclic ring also includes any multicyclic ring in which any of above defined heterocyclic rings is fused to an aryl ring. The heterocyclic ring may be attached at any heteroatom or carbon atom provided the resultant structure is chemically stable. Such heterocyclic groups include, but are not limited to, tetrahydrofuran, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, 2-oxopiperidinyl, azepinyl, pyrrolidinyl, imidazolyl, pyridyl, pyrazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyridazinyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, morpholinyl, indolyl, quinolinyl, thienyl, furyl, benzofuranyl, benzothienyl, thiamorpholinyl, thiamorpholinyl sulfoxide, and isoquinolinyl.

The term "substituted heterocyclic" is used herein to describe the heterocyclic just defined having 1 to 4 substituents selected from the group which includes halogen, CN, OH, NO₂, amino, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxy, aryloxy, substituted alkoxy, alkylcarbonyl, alkylcarboxy, alkylamino, or arylthio.

The term "thioalkyl" is used herein to refer to the SR group, where R is alkyl or substituted alkyl, containing 1 to 8 carbon atoms, preferably 1 to 6 carbon atoms.

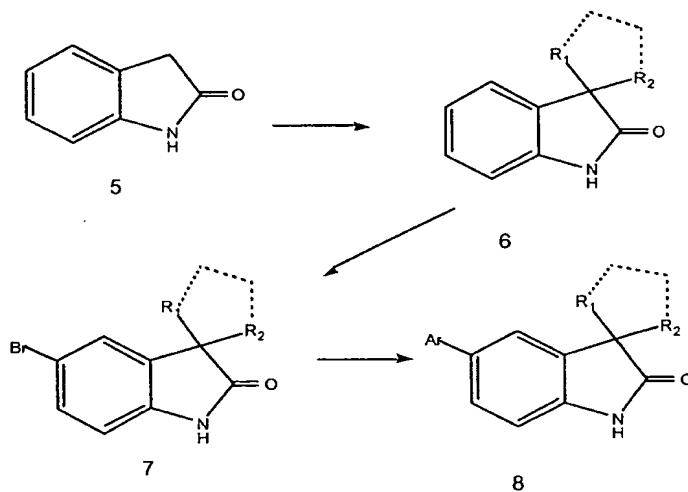
- 23 -

The term "alkoxy" is used herein to refer to the OR group, where R is alkyl or substituted alkyl, containing 1 to 8 carbon atoms, preferably 1 to 6 carbon atoms. The term "aryloxy" is used herein to refer to the OR group, where R is aryl or substituted aryl, as defined above. The term "alkylcarbonyl" is used herein to refer to the RCO group, where R is alkyl or substituted alkyl, containing 1 to 8 carbon atoms, preferably 1 to 6 carbon atoms. The term "alkylcarboxy" is used herein to refer to the COOR group, where R is alkyl or substituted alkyl, containing 1 to 8 carbon atoms, preferably 1 to 6 carbon atoms. The term "aminoalkyl" refers to both secondary and tertiary amines wherein the alkyl or substituted alkyl groups, containing 1 to 8 carbon atoms, preferably 1 to 6 carbon atoms, which may be either the same or different and the point of attachment is on the nitrogen atom. The term "halogen" refers to Cl, Br, F, or I.

The anti-progestational compounds of this invention may be prepared according to the methods described below.

15

Scheme 1



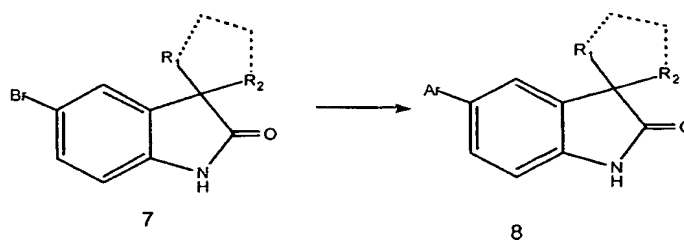
- 24 -

According to scheme 1, commercially available oxindole 5 is treated with mixture a strong organo-metallic base (e.g. butyl lithium, lithium diisopropylamide, potassium hexamethyldisilazide) in an inert solvent (e.g. THF, diethyl ether) under nitrogen at reduce temperature (ca. -20 °C) (Kende, et al, Synth. Commun., 12, 1, 1982). The resulting di-anion is then treated with excess electrophile such as an alkyl halide, preferably the iodide. If R_1 and R_2 are to be joined such as the product 6 contains a spirocycle at position 3, then the electrophile should be bifunctional, i.e. a diiodide. Subsequent bromination of 6 proceeds smoothly with bromine in acetic acid (an organic co-solvent such as dichloromethane may be added as required) in the presence of sodium acetate, to afford the aryl bromide 7. The bromide 7 is reacted with a palladium salt (e.g. tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0)), in a suitable solvent (e.g. THF, dimethoxyethane, ethanol, toluene) at room temperature under an inert atmosphere (argon, nitrogen). The mixture is then treated with an arylboronic acid or boronic acid ester and a base (sodium carbonate, triethylamine, potassium phosphate) in water or fluoride source (cesium fluoride) under anhydrous conditions. The required product 8 is then isolated and purified by standard means.

If R_1 and R_2 are different, then the intermediate 6 is prepared by reacting the dianion of 5 with one equivalent of the electrophile R_1-X (X = leaving group e.g. I). The resultant mono-alkylated compound may be then isolated and re-subjected to the reaction conditions using R_2-X , or alternatively used in-situ for the second alkylation with R_2-X . Alternatively if the desired product 8 is to contain $R_2 = H$, then the isolated mono-alkylated intermediate is taken though the subsequent steps.

- 25 -

Scheme 2

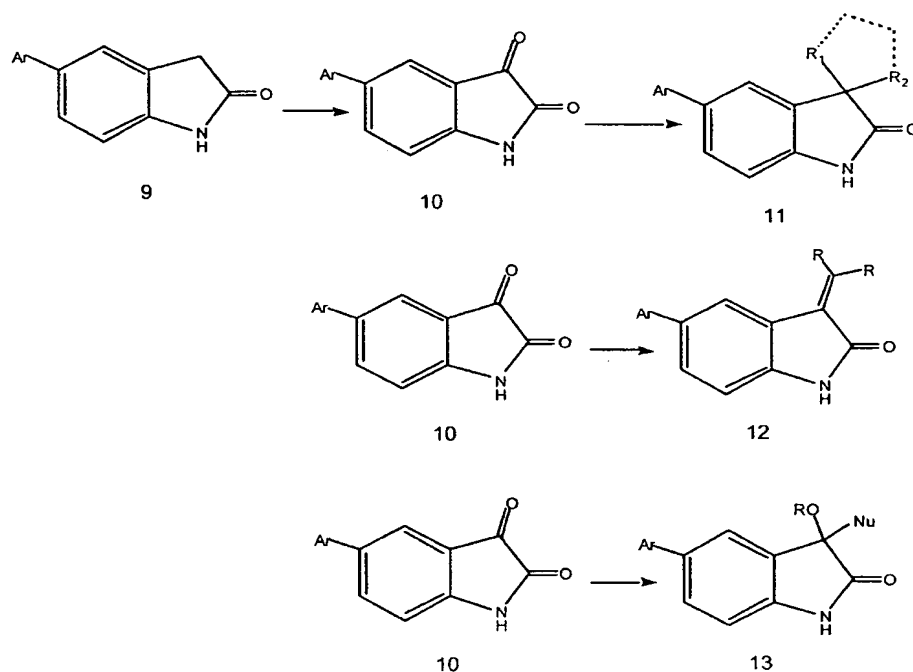


Other methodologies are also available for coupling the pendant aryl group, Ar, to the oxindole platform, for example reaction of compound 7 with an aryl stannane, aryl zinc, or aryl magnesium halide in the presence of a palladium or nickel catalyst (scheme 2). The required aryl-metallic species described above are formed through standard techniques.

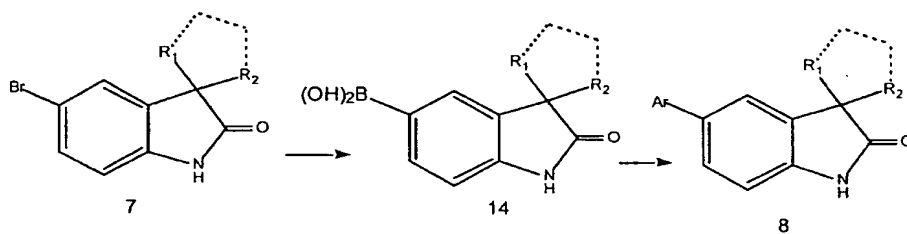
Other functionalities can easily be installed into the 3-position of the indoline platform according to scheme 3. Oxidation of the unsubstituted indoline 9, preferably under neutral or acidic conditions (e.g. selenium dioxide in dry dioxane at reflux) affords the isatin 10. Compound 10 may be further functionalized to provide a ketal 11 by treatment with an alcohol and acid catalyst under dehydrating conditions. Alternatively reaction of 10 with a second ketone under suitable conditions (piperidine in toluene at reflux; or TiCl_4/Zn in THF at reflux) affords alkylidene derivatives 12. Reaction of the isatin 10 with a grignard reagent or organolithium affords tertiary alcohols 13 ($\text{R} = \text{H}$). These alcohols may then be further functionalized by alkylation or acylation procedures.

- 26 -

Scheme 3



Scheme 4



5

Treatment of the bromide **7** in an anhydrous solvent (e.g. THF, Et_2O) with a strong base (sodium hydride preferred, sodium hexamethyldisilazide, potassium hydride) followed by reaction at reduced temperature (-50 to -20 °C) with *n*-butyllithium and *N,N,N,N*'-tetramethylethylenediamine followed after a suitable

period of time by a trialkylborate (trimethyl or triisopropylborate) gives after acidic work-up the boronic acid **14** (scheme 4). Compound **14** may then be reacted under palladium catalyzed conditions (tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0), base (NaHCO₃, Na₂CO₃, K₂CO₃, triethylamine, CsF) solvent (toluene/EtOH/water, 5 THF/water, dimethoxyethane/water, anhydrous dimethoxyethane) with an aryl bromide, aryl iodide, aryltrifluoromethane sulfonate of aryl fluorosulfonate, to provide the desired compounds **8**.

An alternative strategy would be to prepare an organo zinc or magnesium reagent from compound **7** and react it *in-situ* with an aryl bromide, aryl iodide, 10 aryltrifluoromethane sulfonate of arylfluorosulfonate, under palladium catalyzed conditions to afford compound **8**. Such an organo zinc or magnesium species could be prepared by treatment of the bromide **7** in an anhydrous solvent (e.g. THF, Et₂O) with a strong base (sodium hydride preferred, sodium hexamethyldisilazide, potassium hydride) followed by reaction at reduced temperature (-50 to -20 °C) with n- 15 butyllithium and *N,N,N',N'*-tetramethylethylenediamine followed after a suitable period of time by reaction with anhydrous zinc chloride or magnesium bromide.

The anti-progestational compounds of the present invention can be used in the form of salts derived from pharmaceutically or physiologically acceptable acids or bases. These salts include, but are not limited to, the following salts with inorganic 20 acids such as hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, nitric acid, phosphoric acid and, as the case may be, such organic acids as acetic acid, oxalic acid, succinic acid, and maleic acid. Other salts include salts with alkali metals or alkaline earth metals, such as sodium, potassium, calcium or magnesium in the form of esters, carbamates and other conventional "pro-drug" forms, which, when administered in such form, convert to 25 the active moiety *in vivo*.

When the compounds and combinations herein are employed for the utilities described above, they may be combined with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or excipients, for example, solvents, diluents and the like, and may be administered orally in such forms as tablets, capsules, dispersible powders,

- 28 -

granules, or suspensions containing, for example, from about 0.05 to 5% of suspending agent, syrups containing, for example, from about 10 to 50% of sugar, and elixirs containing, for example, from about 20 to 50% ethanol, and the like, or parenterally in the form of sterile injectable solutions or suspensions containing from
5 about 0.05 to 5% suspending agent in an isotonic medium. Such pharmaceutical preparations may contain, for example, from about 25 to about 90% of the active ingredient in combination with the carrier, more usually between about 5% and 60% by weight.

These active compounds may be administered orally as well as by
10 intravenous, intramuscular, or subcutaneous routes. Solid carriers include starch, lactose, dicalcium phosphate, microcrystalline cellulose, sucrose and kaolin, while liquid carriers include sterile water, polyethylene glycols, non-ionic surfactants and edible oils such as corn, peanut and sesame oils, as are appropriate to the nature of the active ingredient and the particular form of administration desired. Adjuvants
15 customarily employed in the preparation of pharmaceutical compositions may be advantageously included, such as flavoring agents, coloring agents, preserving agents, and antioxidants, for example, vitamin E, ascorbic acid, BHT and BHA.

The preferred pharmaceutical compositions from the standpoint of ease of preparation and administration are solid compositions, particularly tablets and hard-
20 filled or liquid-filled capsules. Oral administration of the compounds is preferred.

These combinations may also be administered parenterally or intraperitoneally. Solutions or suspensions of these active compounds as a free base or pharmacologically acceptable salt can be prepared in water suitably mixed with a surfactant such as hydroxypropylcellulose. Dispersions can also be prepared in
25 glycerol, liquid, polyethylene glycols and mixtures thereof in oils. Under ordinary conditions of storage and use, these preparations contain a preservative to prevent the growth of microorganisms.

The pharmaceutical forms suitable for injectable use include sterile aqueous solutions or dispersions and sterile powders for the extemporaneous preparation of

- 29 -

sterile injectable solutions or dispersions. In all cases, the form must be sterile and must be fluid to the extent that easy syringe ability exists. It must be stable under conditions of manufacture and storage and must be preserved against the contaminating action of microorganisms such as bacterial and fungi. The carrier can
5 be a solvent or dispersion medium containing, for example, water, ethanol (e.g., glycerol, propylene glycol and liquid polyethylene glycol), suitable mixtures thereof, and vegetable oil.

The present invention may be further understood by the following non-limiting examples of anti-progestational compounds.

10

EXAMPLE 1

5-(3-Nitro-phenyl)-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one

5-(Bromo)-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one.

A solution of oxindole (2.0 g, 15.0 mmol) and sodium acetate (2.1 g, 25.5
15 mmol) in CHCl_3 (20 cm^3) was treated with bromine (2.4 g, 15.0 mmol) in CHCl_3 (10 cm^3). After 30 min. the mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature (RT) and stirred for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc (500 cm^3) and poured into water. The aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (x 2), the combined organic layers were washed with water, sat. sodium hydrogen carbonate solution,
20 brine, dried (MgSO_4), and evaporated to give the title compound (3.1 g, 14.6 mmol, 96 %) as an off-white solid which was used without further purification: m.p. 221-223 °C; ^1H NMR ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$) δ 3.51 (s, 2H), 6.76 (d, 1H, $J = 8.1$ Hz), 7.33 (dd, 1H, $J = 8.1$, 1.7 Hz), 7.37 (s, 1H), 10.49 (br s, 1H); ^{13}C NMR ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$) δ 36.10 (t), 111.21 (d), 113.16 (s), 127.54 (d), 128.3 (s), 130.40 (d), 143.34 (s), 176.24 (s); MS (EI) m/z 211,
25 213 (M) $^+$.

5-bromo-2-indolinone (1.08 g, 5.09 mmol) and tetrakis(triphenyl phosphine) Pd (0) (0.273 g) were stirred under an atmosphere of nitrogen in ethylene glycol dimethyl ether (35 mL). After 15 minutes, 3-nitrophenyl boronic acid (1.70 g, 10.2 mmol) was added, followed by potassium carbonate (4.24 g, 30.7 mmol) in water (15

- 30 -

mL). The reaction was heated to reflux overnight, cooled to room temperature and then filtered. Saturated ammonium chloride was added. The water layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 X 20 mL). The combined organic layer was dried MgSO_4 , filtered, and solvent removed in vacuo. Product purified by flash silica gel chromatography; eluted: 3:2 hexane; ethyl acetate, to give 5-(3-Nitro-phenyl)-1, 3-dihydro-indol-2-one (0.084 g, 65%), $\text{Mp} = 269^\circ\text{C}$; $^1\text{H NMR}$ (DMSO) δ 10.5 (s, 1 H), 8.38-8.36 (m, 1 H) 8.17-8.14 (m, 1 H), 8.10-8.07 (m, 1 H), 7.75-7.60 (m, 3 H), 6.95 (d, 1 H, $J = 8.1$ Hz), 3.57 (s, 2 H); IR (KBr) 3420, 3190, 1700 cm^{-1} ; MS (EI) m/z 253 (M-H); CHN calculated for $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{10}\text{N}_2\text{O}$: C, 66.14; H, 3.96; N, 11.02; Found: C, 64.59; H, 4.16; N, 9.43.

EXAMPLE 2

3-methyl-5-(3-nitrophenyl)-1,3-dihydroindol-2-one

5-bromo-3-methyl-indol-2-one

Under an atmosphere of nitrogen, bromine (0.96 g, 6.0 mmol) in acetic acid (5 cm^3) was added drop wise to a solution of 3-methyl-2-indolinone (0.8749 g, 6.0 mmol) (Kende, et al, Synth. Commun., 12, 1, 1982) and sodium acetate (0.50 g, 6.0 mmol) in acetic acid (10 cm^3). The reaction was stirred at room temperature for 3.5 h. Saturated sodium carbonate was added to quench the reaction. The water layer was extracted EtOAc (x3), dried (MgSO_4), filtered, and evaporated to give the title compound (1.26g, 93%), $\text{Mp} = 119\text{-}120^\circ\text{C}$; $^1\text{H NMR}$ (DMSO) δ 1.32 (d, 3 H, $J = 7.66$ Hz), 3.45 (q, 1 H, $J = 7.62$ Hz), 6.77 (d, 1 H, $J = 8.23$ Hz), 7.46 (s, 1 H), 7.36-7.33 (m, 1 H), 10.4 (s, 1 H); IR (KBr) 3200, 1725 cm^{-1} ; MS (EI) m/z 224/226 (M-H); CHN calculated for $\text{C}_9\text{H}_8\text{BrNO}$: C, 47.82; H, 3.57; N, 6.20; Found: C, 47.44; H, 3.42; N, 6.04.

5-Bromo-3-methyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one (0.50 g, 2.22 mmol) and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.15 g) were stirred under an atmosphere of nitrogen in dimethoxyethane (18 cm^3). After 15 min., 3-nitrophenyl boronic acid (0.74 g, 4.45 mmol) was added, followed by potassium carbonate (1.86 g, 13.5 mmol)

- 31 -

in water (7 cm³). The reaction was heated to reflux for 8 h and then stirred at room temperature overnight. Saturated ammonium chloride was added; and the aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (x3). The combined organic layers were dried (MgSO₄), filtered, and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc: hexane 1:2); eluted: 2:1 hexane; ethyl acetate, to give the title compound (0.30 g, 47 %), mp 200-203 °C; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.41 (d, 3 H, *J* = 7.61 Hz), 3.50 (q, 1 H, *J* = 7.60 Hz), 6.96 (d, 1 H, *J* = 8.08 Hz), 7.62 (d, 1 H, *J* = 8.06 Hz), 7.75-7.70 (m, 2 H), 8.18-8.10 (m, 2 H), 8.41-8.39 (m, 1 H), 10.5 (s, 1 H); IR (KBr) 3450, 1700 cm⁻¹; MS (EI) *m/z* 267 (M-H); CHN calculated for C₁₅H₁₂N₂O₃ + 0.2C₄H₈O₂: C, 66.61; H, 4.46; N, 9.83; Found: C, 66.26; H, 4.59; N, 10.06.

EXAMPLE 3

5-(3-Methoxy-phenyl)-3,3-dimethyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one

15 5-bromo-1,3-dihydro-3,3-dimethyl-2H-indol-2-one

3,3-dimethyl-indol-2-one (0.65 g, 4.03 mmol) and sodium acetate (0.33 g, 4.07 mmol) were stirred in acetic acid (5 cm³) then bromine (0.66 g, 4.13 mmol) in acetic acid (5 cm³) was added drop-wise to the reaction mixture. The reaction was stirred for 50 min., and then poured into water. The mixture was basified with sodium carbonate and then extracted with ethyl acetate (x3), dried (MgSO₄), filtered, and evaporated to the title compound (0.89 g, 92%) ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.21 (s, 6 H), 6.76 (d, 1 H, *J* = 8.22 Hz), 7.29 (dd, 1 H, *J* = 2.12 Hz, 8.23 Hz), 7.49 (d, 1 H, *J* = 2.03 Hz), 10.4 (s, 1H).

5-bromo-1,3-dihydro-3,3-dimethyl-2H-indol-2-one (0.33 g, 1.38 mmol) and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.094 g) were stirred under an atmosphere of nitrogen in dimethoxyethane (12 cm³). After 15 minutes, 3-methoxyphenylboronic acid (0.42 g, 2.76 mmol) was added, followed by potassium carbonate (1.15 g, 8.34 mmol) in water (5 cm³). The reaction was heated to reflux for 5 hours, and then cooled to room temperature. Saturated aqueous ammonium

- 32 -

chloride and EtOAc were added and the mixture was filtered. The aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (x2), and the combined organic layers were dried (MgSO₄), filtered, and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc: hexane 1:3) to afford the title compound (0.11g, 31%), mp = 157-158 °C; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 3.34 (s, 6 H), 3.82 (s, 3 H), 6.87 - 6.93 (m, 2 H), 7.20-7.15 (m, 2 H), 7.37-7.32 (m, 1 H), 7.49-7.46 (m, 1 H), 7.63 (d, 1 H, *J* = 1.14 Hz), 10.4 (s, 1 H); MS (EI) *m/z* 266 (M-H); CHN calculated for C₁₇H₁₇NO₂: C, 76.38; H, 6.41; N, 5.24; Found: C, 76.02; H, 6.49; N, 5.02.

10

EXAMPLE 4

5-(3-Chloro-phenyl)-3,3-dimethyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one

5-bromo-1,3-dihydro-3,3-dimethyl-2H-indol-2-one (0.98 g, 4.07 mol) and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.239 g) were stirred under an atmosphere of nitrogen in dimethoxyethane (35 cm³). After 15 min., 3-chlorophenylboronic acid (1.27 g, 8.13 mol) was added, followed by potassium carbonate (3.40 g, 45 mmol) in water (15 cm³). The reaction was heated to reflux for 2 hours and then stirred at room temperature overnight. The mixture was diluted with sat. ammonium chloride and extracted with EtOAc (x3). The combined organic layers were dried (MgSO₄), filtered, and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc: hexane, 1:3) to afford the title compound (0.284 g, 25%): mp 188 -189 °C; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 3.34 (s, 6 H), 6.93 (d, 1 H, *J* = 8.04 Hz), 7.38-7.35 (m, 1 H), 7.53-7.43 (m, 2 H), 7.61 (d, 1 H, *J* = 7.68 Hz), 7.70 (s, 2 H), 10.40 (s, 1 H); IR (KBr) 3420, 3150, 3050, 1700 cm⁻¹; MS (EI) *m/z* 270 (M-H); CHN calculated for C₁₆H₁₄ClNO + 0.1C₄H₈O₂: C, 70.21; H, 5.32; N, 4.99; Found: C, 70.3; H, 5.44; N, 4.93.

EXAMPLE 5

3,3-Dimethyl-5-(3-nitro-phenyl)-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one

5-bromo-1,3-dihydro-3,3-dimethyl-2H-indol-2-one (1.02 g, 4.26 mmol) and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.244 g) were stirred under an atmosphere of nitrogen in dimethoxyethane (35 cm³). After 15 minutes, 3-nitrophenylboronic acid (1.43 g, 2.56 mmol) was added, followed by potassium carbonate (3.54 g, 2.56 mmol) in water (15 cm³). The reaction was heated to reflux for 2 hours and then stirred at room temperature overnight. Saturated ammonium chloride and EtOAc were added and the mixture was filtered. The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (x2), and then the combined organic layers were dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered, and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc: hexane, gradient elution) to afford the title compound (0.86 g, 67 %) mp 234 -235 °C; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 3.33 (s, 6 H), 6.98 (d, 1 H, *J* = 8.06 Hz), 7.61 (dd, 1H, *J* = 1.85, 8.03 Hz), 7.73 (t, 1 H, *J* = 7.98 Hz), 7.81 (d, 1 H, *J* = 1.63 Hz), 8.11-8.18 (m, 2 H), 8.42-8.43 (m, 1H), 10.5 (s, 1 H); MS (EI) *m/z* 281; CHN calculated for C₁₆H₁₄N₂O₃·0.2H₂O: C, 67.51; H, 4.92; N, 9.37; Found: C, 67.48; H, 5.17; N, 9.48.

EXAMPLE 6

5-(3-Chloro-phenyl)-3-ethyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one20 3-Ethyl-indol-2-one

A solution of oxindole (40 g, 0.3 mol) in dry THF (400 ml) under N₂ was cooled to -25 °C and treated drop wise with *n*-butyl lithium (2.5M in hexanes, 240 ml, 0.6 mol). To the resulting solution was added N,N,N',N'-tetramethylethylenediamine (90.4 ml, 0.6 mol). After 30 min. iodoethane (48 ml, 0.6 mol) was added and the reaction mixture was allowed to warm to RT and stirred over night. The reaction mixture was poured into aqueous NH₄Cl solution, extracted with EtOAc (2x) and the combined organic layers were washed with dil. HCl, water, brine, dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated. The residual oil was triturated with hexane to afford the crude product (24.5 g, 51%). A sample (3 g) was recrystallized from EtOAc/hexane to obtain the

- 34 -

title compound (1.4 g), m.p. 100 – 101 °C; ¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 0.76 (t, 3H, *J* = 7.5 Hz), 1.8 – 2.0 (m, 2H), 3.38 (t, 3H, *J* = 5.7 Hz), 6.8 (dt, 1H, *J* = 7.69, 0.45 Hz), 6.93 (dt, 1H, *J* = 7.45, 1.10 Hz), 7.15 (m, 1H), 7.22 (m, 1H), 10.3 (s, 1H); MS (ESI) *m/z* 270 [M+H].

5 5-Bromo-3-ethyloxindole

A solution of 3-ethyloxindole (6.0 g, 40 mmol) and sodium acetate (4 g, 48 mmol) in acetic acid (100 ml) was treated with bromine (6.4 g, 40 mmol). After 30 min. the mixture was diluted with water and extracted with EtOAc (2x); the combined organic layers were washed with water, sat. sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, and
10 brine, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated to afford the crude product (9.2 g, 96%). A sample was recrystallized from EtOAc/hexane to obtain the title compound, m.p. 130 – 132 °C; ¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 0.74 (t, 3H, *J* = 7.5 Hz), 1.8 – 2.0 (m, 2H), 3.45 (t, 1H, *J* = 5.5 Hz), 6.76 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.35 Hz), 7.42 (m, 1H), 10.43 (s, 1H); MS (-ESI) *m/z* 238/240 (M-H).

15 A solution of 5-bromo-3-ethyl-oxindole (3.5 g, 14.6 mmol), 3-chlorophenylboronic acid (2.4 g, 15 mmol), potassium carbonate (4.5 g, 33 mmol) and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.87 g, 0.75 mmol) in dimethoxyethane (160 ml), ethanol (40 ml), and water (40 ml) was heated to reflux to 6 hours. After cooling to RT, the mixture was diluted with water and extracted with
20 EtOAc (3x). The combined organic extracts were washed with water, then brine, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc:hexane 1:3) to afford the title compound (0.46 g, 12%), m.p. 118 – 120 °C; ¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 0.78 (t, 3H, *J* = 7.25 Hz) 1.8 – 2.02 (m, 2H), 3.47 (t, 1H, *J* = 5.71 Hz), 6.89 (d, 3H, *J* = 8.1 Hz), 7.35 (m, 1H), 7.44 (t, 1H, *J* = 7.91 Hz), 7.51 (m, 1H), 7.58 (m, 2H), 7.67 (t, 1H, *J* = 1.76 Hz), 10.5 (s, 1H); MS (-ESI) *m/z* 270 (M-H).
25

EXAMPLE 7

5-(3-Chloro-phenyl)-3,3-diethyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one

A solution of 3-ethylindol-2-one (16 g, 0.1 mol) in dry THF (200 ml) under N₂ was cooled to -25 °C and treated drop wise with n-butyllithium (2.5M in hexanes, 80 ml, 0.2 mol). To the resulting solution was added N,N,N',N'-tetramethylethylenediamine (30 ml, 0.2 mol). After 30 min. iodoethane (8 ml, 0.1 mol) was added and the reaction mixture was allowed to warm to RT and stirred over night. The reaction mixture was poured into an aqueous NH₄Cl solution, extracted with EtOAc (2x) and the combined organic layers were washed with dil. HCl, water, brine, dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated. The residual oil was triturated with hexane to afford the title product (9 g, 45%), m.p. 156 – 159 °C; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 10.44 (s, 1H), 7.70 - 7.69 (t, 1H), 7.62 - 7.59 (m, 1H), 7.58 (d, 1H J=1.7Hz), 7.53-7.50 (m, 1H), 7.45 - 7.41 (t, 1H), 7.36 - 7.35 (m, 1H), 7.34 - 7.33 (m, 1H), 6.91 - 6.89 (d, 1H J=8.2Hz), 1.87 - 1.80 (m, 2H), 1.77 - 1.70 (m, 2H), 0.54 - 0.50 (t, 6H); MS (+ESI) m/z 190 (M+H).

5-Bromo-1,3-dihydro-3,3-diethyl-[2H]-indol-2-one

A solution of 3,3-diethylindol-2-one (8 g, 40 mmol) and sodium acetate (4 g, 48 mmol) in acetic acid (100 ml) was treated with bromine (6.4 g, 40 mmol). After 30 min. the mixture was diluted with water and extracted with EtOAc (2x); the combined organic layers were washed with water, sat. sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, then brine, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated to afford the crude product (7.6 g, 75%). A sample was recrystallized from EtOAc/hexane to obtain the title compound, m. p. 164 – 165 °C; ¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 10.45 (s, 1H), 7.41-7.40(d, 1H, J = 2.2Hz), 7.34 - 7.31 (m, 1H), 6.78 - 6.76 (d, 1H J = 8.2 Hz), 1.78-1.65 (m, 4H), 0.50 - 0.46 (m, 6H); MS (-ESI) m/z 266/268 (M-H).

A solution of 5-bromo-1,3-dihydro-3,3-diethyl-[2H]-indol-2-one (2.7 g, 10 mmol), 3-chlorophenylboronic acid (1.6 g, 10 mmol), potassium carbonate (4 g, 30 mmol) and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.5 g, 0.4 mmol) in dimethoxyethane (100 ml), ethanol (25 ml), and water (25 ml) was heated to reflux

- 36 -

for 6 hours. After cooling to RT, the mixture was diluted with water and extracted with EtOAc (2x). The combined organic extracts were washed with water, then brine, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc:hexane 1:3) to afford the title compound (0.8 g, 27%),
5 m.p. 195 – 197 °C; ¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 7.70 (t, 1H, *J* = 2 Hz), 7.62 - 7.60 (m, 1H), 7.58 (d, 1H, *J* = 1.7 Hz), 7.52, (dd, 1H, *J* = 8.1, 2 Hz), 7.43 (t, 1H, 7.9 Hz), 7.36 - 7.33 (m, 1H), 6.90 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.1 Hz), 1.87 - 1.70 (m, 4H) and 0.52 (t, 6H, *J* = 7.4 Hz); MS (+APCI) *m/z* 300/302 (M-H)

10

EXAMPLE 8

5-(3-Chloro-phenyl)-3-methoxy-3-methyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one

A solution of 5-bromoisatin (5.0 g, 22 mmol) in dry THF (50 cm³) under N₂ was cooled to 0 °C and treated drop-wise with methyl magnesium bromide (3M in diethylether, 14.7 cm³, 44 mmol) and the mixture was allowed to warm up-to room
15 temperature. The reaction was poured into sat. ammonium chloride solution, then extracted into EtOAc (x3). The combined organic layers were then washed with water, brine, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated. The residue was then purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc: hexane, gradient elution) to afford 5-bromo-3-hydroxy-3-methyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one (1.53 g, 6.32 mmol, 29%): ¹H NMR
20 (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.38 (s, 3H), 5.99 (s, 1H), 6.77 (d, 1H, *J* = 1.7 Hz), 7.38 (s, 1H, br); MS ((-) ESI) *m/z* 240/242 (M).

5-bromo-3-hydroxy-3-methyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one (1.0 g, 4.1 mmol) was dissolved in dry DMF (15 cm³) cooled to 0 °C and treated with potassium *tert*-butoxide (1M in THF, 4.5 cm³, 4.5 mmol). After 15 min. methyl-*p*-toluenesulfonate
25 (0.93 g, 5 mmol) was added and the mixture was allowed to warm up-to room temperature. After 2h the mixture was poured into saturated ammonium chloride solution and extracted with EtOAc (x2), then the combined organic layers were washed with water, sodium hydroxide (1N, x2), water (x3), dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated. The residue was then purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc:

- 37 -

hexane, gradient elution) to afford 5-bromo-3-methoxy-3-methyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one (0.56 g, 2.2 mmol, 53%): ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 1.59 (s, 3H), 3.18 (s, 3H), 6.73 (d, 1H, $J = 8.2$ Hz), 7.45 (dd, 1H, $J = 8.2, 2$ Hz), 7.52 (d, 1H, $J = 2$ Hz); MS (EI) m/z 225 (M) $^+$.

5 A solution of 5-bromo-3-methoxy-3-methyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one (0.52 g, 2.0 mmol) and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.12 g, 0.1 mmol) was dissolved in dimethoxyethane (22 cm^3). After 15 min., 3-chlorophenylboronic acid (0.63 g, 4.1 mmol) and sodium carbonate (1.0 g) in water (10 cm^3) was added and the reaction was heated under reflux. After 2h the mixture was cooled, poured into water and extracted with EtOAc (x2), the combined organic extracts were washed with sodium hydroxide solution (1N, x2) water, brine, dried (MgSO_4) and evaporated. The residue was then purified by column chromatography (SiO_2 , EtOAc: hexane, 5:1) to afford 5-(3-chloro-phenyl)-3-methoxy-3-methyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one (0.17 g, 0.58 mmol, 29%): ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 1.65 (s, 3H), 2.91 (s, 1H), 3.24 (s, 3H), 6.92 (d, 1H, $J = 8.1$ Hz), 7.26 - 7.38 (m, 2H), 7.43 - 7.46 (m, 1H), 7.52 - 7.55 (m, 1H), 7.62 (d, 1H, $J = 1.8$ Hz); MS ((+) APCI) m/z 288 (M + H) $^+$.

10

15

EXAMPLE 9

5-(3-Chloro-phenyl)-3-methoxy-3-prop-1-ynyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one

20 To a solution of 5-bromoisatin (2.5 g, 11 mmol) in dry THF (100 cm^3) at -10 $^\circ\text{C}$ under a nitrogen atmosphere was added 1-propynylmagnesium bromide (0.5 M in THF, 47 cm^3 , 23.5 mmol). After 1h, the mixture was poured into saturated ammonium chloride and extracted with EtOAc (x3), washed with brine, dried (MgSO_4) and evaporated to afford 5-bromo-3-hydroxy-3-prop-1-ynyl-1,3-dihydroindol-2-one (2.83 g, 10.6 mmol, 97%) which was used without further purification: (CDCl_3) δ 1.83 (s, 3H), 6.79 (d, 1H, $J = 8.0$ Hz), 6.90 (s, 1H), 7.41 - 7.44 (m, 2H), 10.59 (s, 1H); MS ((-) ESI) m/z 264 (M-H) $^-$.

25

To a solution of 5-bromo-3-hydroxy-3-prop-1-ynyl-1,3-dihydroindol-2-one (1.0 g, 3.75 mmol) in dry DMF (15 cm^3) at 0 $^\circ\text{C}$, was added potassium *tert*-butoxide

- 38 -

(1M in THF, 4.1 cm³, 4.1 mmol). After 15 min. methyl *p*-toluenesulfonate (0.85 g, 4.6 mmol) was added and the mixture was allowed to warm up to room temperature. After 16h the mixture was poured into saturated ammonium chloride, extracted with EtOAc (x3), washed with water, brine, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated. The residue
5 was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc: hexane 1:3) to afford 5-bromo-3-methoxy-3-prop-1-ynyl-1,3-dihydroindol-2-one (0.62 g, 2.21 mmol, 59%): (CDCl₃) δ *inter alia* 1.87 (s, 3H), 3.19 (s, 3H), 3.35 (s, 1H), 6.72 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.3 Hz), 7.48 (dd, 1H, *J* = 8.3, 2 Hz), 7.63 (d, 1H, *J* = 2 Hz); MS (EI) *m/z* 279 (M)⁺.

5-bromo-3-methoxy-3-prop-1-ynyl-1,3-dihydroindol-2-one (0.56 g, 2.0 mmol)
10 and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.12 g, 0.10 mmol) were stirred at room temperature in dimethoxyethane (22 cm³). After 15 min. 3-chlorophenylboronic acid (0.63 g, 4.0 mmol) and sodium carbonate (1.06 g, 10 mmol) in water (11 cm³) were added and the mixture heated under reflux. After 16h, the mixture was cooled, poured into water and extracted with EtOAc (x3). The combined organic layers were
15 washed with sodium hydroxide (1N, x2), brine, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated. The residue was subjected to column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc: hexane, gradient elution) and the product triturated with hexane to afford the title compound (0.095 g, 0.30 mmol, 15%) as a solid: mp. >190 °C (decomp.); (CDCl₃) δ 1.88 (s, 3H), 3.25 (s, 3H), 3.30 (s, 1H), 6.91 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.1Hz), 7.29 - 7.39 (m, 2H), 7.44 - 7.47 (m, 1H),
20 7.54 - 7.57 (m, 2H), 7.74 (d, 1H, *J* = 1.7 Hz); MS (EI) *m/z* 311 (M⁺).

EXAMPLE 10

5-(3-Chloro-phenyl)-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one

A solution of the 5-bromoxindole (0.5 g, 2.4 mmol) and
25 tetrakis(triphenylphosphine) palladium (0.14 g, 0.12 mmol) in dimethoxyethane (10 cm³) was stirred under N₂ for 20 min.. To this mixture was then added 3-chlorophenylboronic acid (0.44 g, 2.83 mmol) and sodium carbonate (0.75 g, 7.1 mmol) in water (4 cm³). The solution was brought to reflux for 6 h then cooled to RT, poured into water and extracted with EtOAc (x 3). The combined organic

- 39 -

extracts were washed with water, brine, dried (MgSO₄), and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, ethyl acetate: hexane 1:3) to afford the title compound (0.49 g, 2.0 mmol, 86 %) as a tan solid: m.p. 169-171 °C, ¹H NMR (THF-d₈) δ 3.45 (s, 2H), 6.85 (d, 1H *J* = 8.1 Hz), 7.25 (d, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 7.35 (dd, *J* = 7.8, 7.8 Hz, 1H), 7.43 (d, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.49 (d, *J* = 7.8 Hz, 1H), 7.50 (s, 1H), 7.59 (dd, *J* = 1.78, 1.78 Hz, 1H), 9.5 (br s, 1H); ¹³C NMR (THF-d₈) δ 36.39 (t), 109.80, 123.97, 125.55, 127.19 (d), 127.68 (s), 130.89 (d), 133.73, 135.29, 144.23, 145.09, 176.45 (s); MS (EI) *m/z* 243, 245 (M)⁺; Anal. (C₁₄H₁₀ClNO) C, H, N.

10

EXAMPLE 11

5'-(3-Chlorophenyl)spiro[1,3-dioxolane-2,3'-(3H) indol]-2'(1'H)-one
5-[3-Chloro-phenyl]-1H-indole-2,3-dione

A solution of 5-(3-Chloro-phenyl)-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one (10.0 g, 41 mmol) in dioxane (200 cm³) and SeO₂ (22.8 g, 205 mmol) was brought to reflux for 2 h then cooled to RT and concentrated onto Florisil. The Florisil was washed (acetone:CHCl₃, 1:9) and the combined organic extracts were evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, acetone:CHCl₃ 1:8) to afford the title compound (8 g, 31 mmol, 76 %) as a tan solid: m.p. 256-258 °C, ¹H NMR (THF-d₈) δ 6.96 (d, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 1H), 7.33 (d, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.4 (dd, *J* = 7.7, 7.7 Hz, 1H), 7.56 (d, *J* = 7.7 Hz, 1H), 7.68 (dd, *J* = 1.84, 1.84 Hz, 1H), 7.83-7.86 (m, 2H), 10.05 (br s, 1H); ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 113.30 (d), 119.08 (s), 123.44, 125.57, 126.65, 127.92, 131.41 (d), 133.88, 134.47 (s), 137.25 (d), 141.51, 150.99, 160.15, 184.83 (s); MS (EI) *m/z* 256 (M-H)⁺; Anal. (C₁₄H₈ClNO₂·0.1 H₂O) C, H, N.

A solution of the 5-[3-chloro-phenyl]-1H-indole-2,3-dione (0.5 g, 1.9 mmol) in toluene (30 cm³) and ethylene glycol (1.1 cm³, 19.4 mmol) and pTsOH (0.04 g, 0.2 mmol) was brought to reflux with azeotropic removal of water for 12 h then cooled to RT. The reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc (100 cm³) and washed with water, sat. sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, brine, dried (MgSO₄), and evaporated to give an oily residue. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂,

- 40 -

CH₂Cl₂) to afford the title compound (0.47 g, 1.6 mmol, 80 %) as a tan solid: m.p. 159-161 °C ; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 4.29-4.39 (M, 4H), 6.93 (d, *J* = 8.6 Hz, 1H), 7.4 (d, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.46 (dd, *J* = 7.9, 7.9 Hz, 1H), 7.7 (d, *J* = 7.7 Hz, 1H), 7.68-7.71 (m, 3H), 10.55 (s, 1H); ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 65.53 (t), 110.89, 123.25, 124.81 (d), 125.65 (s), 125.83, 126.79, 130.09, 130.61 (d), 132.96, 133.64, 141.53, 142.67, 174.36 (s); MS (EI) *m/z* 301/303 (M)⁺; Anal. (C₁₆H₁₂ClNO₃) C, H, N.

EXAMPLE 12

5'-(3-Chlorophenyl)spiro[1,3-dioxane-2,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one

The title compound was prepared according to the procedure for example 11: m.p. 242-244 °C ; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.7 (M, 1H), 2.2 (M, 1H), 3.95 (m, 2H), 4.78 (t, 2H), 6.9 (d, *J* = 7.9 Hz, 1H), 7.39 (d, *J* = 7.9 Hz, 1H), 7.46 (dd, *J* = 7.9, 7.9 Hz, 1H), 7.59-7.68 (m, 3H), 10.59 (br s, 1H); ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 25.19, 60.68 (t), 93.58 (s), 110.94, 122.93, 125.29, 126.29, 127.19 (d), 128.65 (s), 129.92, 131.07 (d), 133.16, 134.08, 141.61, 142.15, 173.29 (s); MS (EI) *m/z* 315/317 (M)⁺; Anal. (C₁₇H₁₄ClNO₃) C, H, N.

EXAMPLE 13

5'-(3-nitrophenyl)spiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one

Spiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one

To a -25 °C solution of oxindole (2.0 g, 15.0 mmol) in 40 (cm³) of anhydrous THF under N₂ was added *n*-butyllithium (1.6 M in hexanes, 19.7 cm³, 31.5 mmol) drop-wise. To the resulting milky solution was added *N,N,N',N'*-tetramethylethylenediamine (4.75 cm³, 31.5 mmol). After 30 min. a solution of 1,4-diiodobutane (21.9 g, 70.6 mmol) in THF (3 cm³) was added and the reaction mixture was allowed to warm to RT and stirred for 14 h. The reaction mixture was poured into water, extracted with EtOAc (x 2), then the combined organic layers were washed with dil. HCl (pH 1), water (x 2), dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc: hexane 1:4) to afford the title

- 41 -

compound (1.4 g, 7.5 mmol, 50%) as a tan solid: ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.8-2.2 (m, 8H), 6.94 (dd, *J* = 7.5, 1.0 Hz, 1H), 7.01 (dd, *J* = 7.5, 1.0 Hz, 1H), 7.14-7.25 (m, 2H), 9.30 (br s, 1H).

5-Bromo-spiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one

5 A solution of spiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one (0.27 g, 1.4 mmol) and sodium acetate (0.12 g, 1.46 mmol) in acetic acid (10 cm³) was treated with bromine (0.24 g, 1.51 mmol) in acetic acid (2 cm³). After 30 min. the mixture was poured into sat. sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and extracted with EtOAc (x 2), the combined organic layers were washed with water, sat. sodium hydrogen
10 carbonate solution, water, dried (MgSO₄), and evaporated to give the title compound (0.37 g, 1.47 mmol, 96 %) as an off-white solid which was used without further purification: ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.8-2.27 (m, 8H), 6.79 (d, *J* = 8 Hz, 1H), 7.30-7.39 (m, 2H), 8.63 (br s, 1H).

15 A solution of 5-bromo-spiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one (0.3 g, 1.1 mmol) and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.07 g, 0.06 mmol) in dimethoxyethane (8 cm³) was stirred under N₂ for 20 min.. To this mixture was then added 3-nitrophenylboronic acid (0.23 g, 1.4 mmol) and sodium carbonate (0.36 g, 3.4 mmol) in water (3 cm³). The solution was brought to reflux for 3 h then cooled to RT, poured into water and extracted with EtOAc (x 3). The combined organic
20 extracts were washed with water, brine, dried (MgSO₄), and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, ethyl acetate: hexane 1:3) to afford the title compound (0.21 g, 0.68 mmol, 62%) as a yellow solid: m.p. 238-240 °C; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.89-1.99 (m, 8H), 6.96 (d, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.58 (dd, *J* = 8.1, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 7.66 (d, *J* = 1.8 Hz, 1H), 7.71 (dd, *J* = 8.0, 8.0 Hz, 1H), 8.13 (dd, *J* = 7.0, 1.0
25 Hz, 2H), 8.4 (d, *J* = 1.8 Hz, 1H), 10.42 (br s, 1H); ¹³C NMR (dioxane-d₈) δ 26.31, 38.13 (t), 53.85 (s), 108.9, 121.15, 121.33, 126.23, 129.38, 132.11 (d), 132.6, 138.32, 141.84, 142.74, 149.14, 182.68 (s); MS (EI) *m/z* 308 (M)⁺.

- 42 -

EXAMPLE 14

3-(1',2'-Dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol-5'-yl] benzaldehyde
Spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'-(1'H)-one

5 A solution of oxindole (25 g, 0.19 mol) in anhydrous tetrahydrofuran (800 cm³) was cooled to -20°C, then *n*-butyllithium (2.5M in hexanes, 152 cm³, 0.38 mol) was added slowly followed by *N,N,N',N'*-tetramethylethylenediamine (51 cm³, 0.38 mol.). After 15 min. 1,5-diiodopentane (174 g, 0.54 mol) was added slowly and the mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature. After stirring for 16 h. saturated
10 aqueous ammonium chloride solution (1L) and EtOAc (1L) were added. After 15 min. the layers were separated and the aqueous phase was extracted EtOAc (x2). The combined organic layers were extracted with hydrochloric acid (1N), then washed with brine (500 cm³), dried (MgSO₄), and concentrated to obtain an oil. The oil was triturated with hexane (200 cm³) and benzene (20 cm³). The precipitate was
15 collected and dried *in vacuo* to obtain the title compound (26.3g, 69.6%) as colorless crystals: mp 110-114°C; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.67 (m, 10H), 6.84 (d, 1H, *J* = 8 Hz) 6.94 (t, 1H, *J* = 8 Hz), 7.17 (t, 1H, *J* = 8 Hz), 7.44 (d, 1H, *J* = 8 Hz), 10.3 (s, 1H).

5'-Bromospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H] indol]-2'-(1'H)-one

20 To a solution of spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2' (1'H)-one (17.6 g, 0.09 mol) in acetic acid (300 cm³) was added sodium acetate (8.0 g, 0.1 mol) and bromine (14.6 g, 0.091 mol) with stirring. After 30 min. at room temperature, the reaction mixture was partitioned between water and EtOAc. The aqueous phase was extracted
25 twice with EtOAc. The combined organic layers were washed with water, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated and the residue was triturated with hexane. The precipitate was collected, and dried *in vacuo* to obtain the title compound (16.5g, 67%) as off-white crystals: mp 196 -199 °C; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.62 (m, 10H), 6.8 (d, 1H, *J* = 6.8 Hz), 7.36 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.2, 1.8 Hz), 7.58 (dd, 1H, *J* = 8.2, 1.8 Hz), 10.44 (s, 1H).

- 43 -

To a solution of 5'-bromospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H] indol]-2'(1'H)-one (1.00 g, 3.57 mmol) in dimethoxyethane (20 cm³) was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0.20 g, 0.17 mmol) under nitrogen. After 15 min. 3-formylphenylboronic acid (1.00 g, 6.93 g) was added followed by potassium carbonate (2.90 g, 21 mmol) in water (10 cm³). After 20h at reflux, the mixture was cooled poured into water and extracted with EtOAc (x3). The combined organic extract was washed with sat. brine, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc: hexane, gradient elution) to afford the title compound (0.66 g, 2.15 mmol, 60%) as a white solid, ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.65 – 1.85 (m, 6H), 1.86 – 2.08 (m, 4H), 7.22 (d, 1H, *J* = 8 Hz), 7.48 (dd, 1H, *J* = 8, 2 Hz), 7.61 (t, 1H, *J* = 8 Hz), 7.66 (d, 1H, *J* = 2 Hz), 7.81 – 7.88 (m, 2H), 8.06 (t, 1H, *J* = 2 Hz), 8.30 (s, 1H, br); MS ((+)ESI) *m/z* 306 (M + H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 15

15 3-(1',2'-Dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol-5'-yl) benzaldehyde oxime

To a solution of 3-(1',2'-dihydro-2'-oxospirocyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol-5'-yl) benzaldehyde (0.59 g, 1.95 mmol) in EtOH: H₂O (10 cm³, 8:2) was added hydroxylamine hydrochloride (0.17 g, 2.5 mmol) and sodium acetate (0.20 g, 2.5 mmol). After 20 min. the mixture was concentrated water was added and extracted with EtOAc (x2). The combined organic layers were washed with sat. sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, water, sat. brine, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated to afford the title oxime (0.63 g, 1.95 mmol, 100%) which was used without further purification, ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.60 – 1.84 (m, 6H), 1.85 – 2.00 (m, 4H), 6.86 (d, 1H, *J* = 8 Hz), 7.36 (dd, 1H, *J* = 8, 2 Hz), 7.43 – 7.50 (m, 1H), 7.57 – 7.67 (m, 2H), 7.85 (s, 1H, br), 8.25 (s, 1H), 8.68 (s, 1H, br), 8.94 (s, 1H, br); MS ((-)ESI) *m/z* 319 (M - H)⁻.

EXAMPLE 16

3-(1',2'-Dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol-5'-yl)benzaldehyde
methyloxime ether

5 To a solution of 3-(1',2'-Dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol-5'-yl) benzaldehyde (0.24 g, 0.79 mmol), and sodium acetate (0.083 g, 1.00 mmol) in EtOH: water (5 cm³, 8:2) was added methoxylamine hydrochloride (0.083 g, 1.00 mmol). After 30 min. the precipitate was isolated by filtration and washed with EtOH:
10 water (8:2, x2), to afford the title compound (0.027 g, 0.08 mmol, 10%) as a white solid: mp 198 - 200 (decomp.): 1.58 - 2.07 (m, 10H), 4.00 (s, 3H), 6.98 (d, 1H, *J* = 8 Hz), 7.42 - 7.49 (m, 2H), 7.53 - 7.58 (m, 2H), 7.64 (d, 1H, *J* = 2 Hz), 7.75 (s, 1H), 8.07 (s, 1H, br), 8.15 (s, 1H); MS ((+)-ESI) *m/z* 335 (M + H)⁺.

15

EXAMPLE 17

3-(1',2'-Dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol-5'-yl)pyridine
carbonitrile

A solution of 3-bromopyridine-5-carbonitrile (2.79 g, 15.26 mmol), hexamethylditin (5.00 g, 15.26 mmol) and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0)
20 (0.20 g, 0.17 mmol) in anhydrous dimethoxyethane (30 cm³) under N₂ was heated under reflux. After 16 h the mixture was concentrated and purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc: hexane 5:95) to afford 3-cyanopyridine-5-trimethylstannane (2.82 g, 10.55 mmol, 69%): ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 0.40 (s, 9H), 8.01 (m, 1H), 8.80 (m, 2H); MS ((+) APCI) *m/z* 269 (M + H)⁺.

25

A solution of 5'-bromospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H] indol]-2'-(1'H)-one (1.97 g, 7.05 mmol), 3-cyanopyridine-5-trimethylstannane (2.26 g, 8.46 mmol), bis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(II)chloride (0.33 g, 0.47 mmol) and lithium chloride (1.48 g, 35 mmol) in anhydrous toluene (30 cm³) was heated under reflux. After 16h the mixture was cooled, partitioned between EtOAc and water, the aqueous

- 45 -

layer was re-extracted with EtOAc (x 2), the combined organic extracts were washed with water, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated. The residue was subjected to column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc: hexane, 1:2) and then further purified by preparative LC (Primesphere C18, 10 micron, 50 x 250 mm, MeCN: H₂O 1:1, 100 cm³/min., RT 7.92 min.) to afford the title compound as white crystals (0.56 g, 1.84 mmol, 26%): mp. 232 - 234 °C, ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.68 - 1.89 (m, 6H), 1.93 - 2.13 (m, 4H), 7.12 (d, 1H, *J* = 8 Hz), 7.49 (dd, 1H, *J* = 8, 2 Hz), 7.66 (d, 1H, 2 Hz), 8.15 (t, 1H, *J* = 2 Hz), 8.39 (s, 1H, br), 8.89 (d, 1H, *J* = 2 Hz), 9.06 (d, 1H, *J* = 2 Hz); MS ((+)-ESI) *m/z* 304 (M + H)⁺; Anal. C₁₉H₁₇N₃O CHN.

10

EXAMPLE 18

5'-(Pyrimidin-5-yl)-spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol-2'(1H)-one

To a solution of 5'-bromospiro [cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'-(1'H)-one (11g, 0.04 mol) in dry tetrahydrofuran (200 cm³) was added of sodium hydride (60% dispersion in mineral oil, 1.6 g, 0.04 mol). After 30 min. stirring at room temperature, the mixture was cooled to -78°C and butyl lithium (1.7M in hexanes, 23.2 cm³, 0.04 mol) was added slowly. After 30 min. di-*iso*-propylborate (25 cm³, 0.11 mol) was added and the mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature. After 2 hrs. hydrochloric acid (1N, 500 cm³) and ethylacetate (500 cm³). The aqueous phase was extracted with ethylacetate, then the combined organic layers were washed with water, brine, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated. The residue was triturated with hexane and the precipitate dried *in vacuo* to obtain (2'-oxo-2, 3-dihydrospiro[cyclohexane-1, 3'- [3H] indol] -5'-yl) boronic acid (8.3 g, 86%) as an off-white solid that was used without further purification. A sample that was further triturated with ethyl acetate had the following properties: mp. 255-260°C dec.; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.50 (m, 2H), 1.73 (m, 8H), 6.82 (d, 1H, *J* = 7.72 Hz) 7.66 (d, 1H, *J* = 7.72 Hz) 7.91 (s, 3H, br), 10.36 (s, 1H); MS ((-)-ESI) *m/z* 244 [M-H].

20

25

A stirred mixture of 5-bromopyrimidine (3.2g, 20 mmol) in toluene (20 cm³), 2'-oxo-2,3-dihydrospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'yl) boronic acid (0.49 g, 2.2

- 46 -

mmol) in ethanol (10 cm³), potassium carbonate (0.28g, 2.0 mmol) in water (10 cm³) and tetrakis (triphenylphosphine)palladium (0) (0.15 g, 0.13 mol) was heated overnight under reflux and in an atmosphere of nitrogen. The reaction mixture was treated with 20 mL of sodium bicarbonate solution and was then extracted with ethyl acetate (2x50mL). The combined organic phases were washed with saturated brine, dried (MgSO₄). Recrystallization from ethanol gave 0.13 g of pure product, mp 227 - 228 °C. IR (KBr) 1700 cm⁻¹ ¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 10.48 (s, 1H), 9.13 (s, 1H), 9.11 (s, 2H), 7.86 (s, 1H) 7.63 (dd, 1H; *J* = 1.5Hz and 8.1Hz), 6.98 (d, 1H *J* = 8.1 Hz), 6.98 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.1) 1.75 (m, 10). MS (ESI) *m/z* 278 (M-H). CHN Calcd for C₁₇H₁₇N₃O, 0.25.H₂O

EXAMPLE 19

5-(3-chlorophenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one

Prepared according to the procedure for example 14: mp. 164-165 °C, ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.60-1.78 (m, 6H), 1.81-1.99 (m, 4H), 7.04 (d, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.22-7.47 (m, 4H), 7.53 (s, 1H), 7.61 (s, 1H), 9.28 (br s, 1H); ¹³C-NMR (CDCl₃) δ 20.17, 24.12, 31.92 (t), 47.22 (s), 109.21, 121.94, 124.06, 125.50, 125.79, 125.97, 126.38, 128.96 (d), 132.88, 133.59, 135.60, 139.14, 142.17, 182.89 (s); MS (EI) *m/z* 310, 312 (M-H)⁺; Anal. (C₁₉H₁₈ClNO) C, H, N.

EXAMPLE 20

5'-(3-Chloro-4-fluorophenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one

Prepared according to the procedure for example 18: mp 188-189 °C; ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ 7.97 (s, 1H), 7.57 - 7.54 (m, 2H), 7.41 - 7.34 (m, 2H), 7.20 (t, 1H, *J* = 8.7 Hz), 9.96 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.1 Hz), 2.04 - 1.65 (m, 10H); MS ((+)APCI) *m/z* 330 [M+H]⁺.

EXAMPLE 21

5'-(3-Fluorophenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one

5 Prepared according to the procedure for example 18: mp 171-172 °C; ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ 8.43 (s, 1H), 7.62 (d, 1H, *J* = 1.8 Hz), 7.42 (dt, 1H, *J* = 6.2, 2.0 Hz), 7.39 - 7.37 (m, 1 H), 7.33 (dt, 1H, *J* = 5.1, 1.3 Hz), 7.26 (dq, 1 H, *J* = 5.9, 2.1 Hz), 7.05 - 6.99 (m, 2H), 2.03 - 1.64 (m, 10H); MS ((+)APCI) *m/z* 296 [M+H]⁺.

EXAMPLE 22

5'-(3,5-Difluorophenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one

Prepared according to the procedure for example 18: mp 180-183 °C; ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ 8.35 (s, 1H), 7.59 (d, 1H, *J* = 2.0 Hz), 7.40 (dd, 1H, *J* = 6.2, 2.0 Hz), 7.10 - 7.03 (m, 2H), 6.99 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.1 Hz), 7.76 (tt, 1 H, *J* = 4.3, 2.3 Hz), 2.05 - 1.62 (m, 10H); MS ((+)APCI) *m/z* 314 [M+H]⁺.

EXAMPLE 23

5-(3,4-Difluorophenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one

Prepared according to the procedure for example 14: m.p. 187 – 189 °C; ¹H-
20 NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.5 – 2.0 (m, 10H), 6.9 (d, *J* = 8.13 Hz, 1H), 7.40 – 7.51 (m, 3H),
7.66 – 7.76 (m, 2H), 10.4 (s, 1H); MS (-ESI) *m/z* 312 (M-H).

EXAMPLE 24

5-[3-(Methylthio)phenyl]spiro [cyclo-hexane-1,3 -[3H] indol-
2(1H)-one

Prepared according to the procedure for example 18: ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.62-2.06 (m, 10H), 2.54 (s, 3H), 6.96 (d, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 7.2-7.5 (m, 5H), 7.62 (s, 1H), 7.75 (s, 1H); ¹³C NMR (DMSO-*d*₆) δ 16.37 (q), 21.62, 25.58, 33.37 (t), 48.67 (s),

- 48 -

110.55, 123.56, 124.36, 125.68, 126.94, 129.64 (d), 135.31, 136.91, 139.33, 140.27, 142.49, 184.29 (s); MS (EI) m/z 324 (M+H)⁺; Anal. (C₂₀H₂₁NOS-(0.1 H₂O)) C, H, N.

EXAMPLE 25**5'-[3-(Methylsulfinylphenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H] indol]-2'(1'H)-one**

A solution of 5-[3-(Methylthio)phenyl]spiro[cyclo-hexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one (0.15 g, 0.46 mmol) in methanol (6 cm³) was treated with NaIO₄ (0.11 g, 0.51 mmol). The reaction was allowed to stir at RT overnight. The methanol was evaporated and the residue taken up in EtOAc (50 cm³) and H₂O. The EtOAc layer was washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄), and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, CH₂Cl₂:methanol, 8:2) to afford the title compound (0.11 g, 0.32 mmol, 70 %) as a white solid: m.p. 190-191 °C ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.65-2.05 (m, 10H), 2.80 (s, 3H), 7.02 (dd, J = 8.0, 3.1 Hz, 1H), 7.46 (d, J = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 7.52-7.75 (m, 4H), 7.0 (s, 1H), 8.7 (s, 1H); ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 21.59, 25.54, 33.44 (t), 44.38 (q), 48.46 (s), 110.53, 12.05, 123.31, 127.08, 129.94, 130.15 (d), 134.17, 137.2, 140.73, 143.27, 146.61, 183.71 (s); MS (EI) m/z 339 (M)⁺; Anal. (C₂₀H₂₁NO₂S-(0.2 H₂O)) C, H, N.

20

EXAMPLE 26**5-[3-(Methylsulfonyl)phenyl]spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H] indol]-2(1H)-one**

A solution of the 5-[3-(Methylthio)phenyl]spiro[cyclo-hexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one (0.15 g, 0.46 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂ (2 cm³) was added to a solution of mCPBA (0.4 g, 2.3 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂ (5 cm³) at RT. The reaction was allowed to stir overnight. The mixture was diluted with CH₂Cl₂ (50 cm³) and washed with saturated bicarbonate solution, water, brine, dried (MgSO₄), and evaporated. The residue was crystallized (Hexane-EtOAc) to afford the title compound (0.132 g, 0.8 mmol, 80 %) as an off white solid: m.p. 240 °C; ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.55-2.1 (m, 10H), 3.15 (s,

- 49 -

3H), 7.01 (d, $J = 8.1$ Hz, 1H), 7.47 (dd, $J = 8.1, 1.5$ Hz, 1H), 7.6-7.7 (m, 2H), 7.82-7.97 (m, 3H), 8.12 (s, 1H); ^{13}C NMR (DMSO- d_6) δ 21.54, 25.50, 33.45 (t), 44.97 (q), 48.44 (s), 110.60, 123.28, 125.92, 127.20, 128.52, 130.31 (d), 132.46, 133.65, 137.34, 140.70, 141.53, 143.25, 183.63 (s); MS (EI) m/z 356 ($M+H$) $^+$; Anal. ($\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{21}\text{NO}_3\text{S} \cdot 0.2 \text{H}_2\text{O}$) C, H, N.

EXAMPLE 27**5'-(3-Chloro-5-fluorophenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one**

Prepared according to the procedure for example 18: mp 178-180 °C; ^1H -NMR (CDCl_3) δ 8.50 (s, 1H), 7.57 (d, 1H, $J = 1.8$ Hz), 7.39 (dd, 1H, $J = 6.2, 1.9$ Hz), 7.33 - 7.32 (m, 1 H), 7.15 (dq, 1H, $J = 5.7, 1.7, 0.7$ Hz), 7.06 (dq, 1 H, $J = 4.2, 1.9, 0.4$ Hz), 7.00 (d, 1H, $J = 8.1$ Hz), 2.05 - 1.64 (m, 10H); MS ((-)-ESI) $[M-H]^-$ @ m/z 328.

EXAMPLE 28**5-(3-Bromo-5-fluorophenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one**

Prepared according to the procedure for example 18: mp. 194 - 196 °C; ^1H -NMR (CDCl_3) δ 1.66 - 2.04 (m, 10H), 7.00 (d, 1H, $J = 8.0$ Hz), 7.17 - 7.28 (m, 2H), 7.41 (dd, 1H, $J = 8, 1.8$ Hz), 7.49 (t, 1H, $J = 1.4$ Hz), 7.58 (d, 1H, $J = 1.5$ Hz) and 8.24 (s, 1H, br); MS ((+)-EI) m/z 373/375 [M^+].

EXAMPLE 29**5'-(3-Fluoro-5-methylphenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one****5'-(3-Fluoro-5-methylphenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one**

A solution of 3-fluoro-5-methoxybenzene trifluoromethanesulfonate (1.6 g, 5.8 mmol) and tetrakis-(triphenylphosphene)-palladium(0) (0.33 g, 286 mmol) in dimethoxyethane (50 mL) was stirred under N_2 for 20 minutes. To this mixture was then added lithium bromide (1.5 g, 172 mmol). This solution was stirred under N_2 for

- 50 -

10 minutes. To this mixture was then added (2'-oxo-2, 3-dihydrospiro[cyclohexane-1, 3'-[3H] indol] -5'-yl) boronic acid (1.3 g, 5.7 mmol) and sodium carbonate (1.2 g, 11.5 mmol) in distilled water (5 mL). The solution was brought to reflux for 6 hours, cooled to room temperature, poured into distilled water and extracted with EtOAc (x 3). The combined organic extracts were washed with 2N NaOH, water, brine, dried (MgSO₄), and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc:Hexane 2:5) to afford the title compound (0.6 g, 32%) as an off-white solid: mp 180-182 °C; ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ 8.21 (s, 1H), 7.60 (d, 1H, *J* = 1.8 Hz), 7.41 (dd, 1H, *J* = 6.2, 1.9 Hz), 6.97 (d, 1H, *J* = 7.9 Hz), 6.88 - 6.86 (m, 1H), 6.84 (t, 1H, *J* = 1.8 Hz), 6.59 (dt, 1H, *J* = 6.2, 2.2 Hz), 3.86 (s, 3H), 2.00 - 1.62 (m, 10H); MS ((-ESI) [M-H]⁻ @ *m/z* 324.

EXAMPLE 30

5'-(3-Nitrophenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one

15 Prepared according to the procedure for example 14: mp. 196-198 °C, ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.67 - 1.81 (m, 6H), 1.82 - 2.05 (m, 4H), 7.04 (d, 1H, *J* = 8 Hz), 7.48 (dd, 1H, *J* = 8 and 1 Hz), 7.59 (d, 1H, *J* = 8 Hz), 7.63 - 7.65 (m, 1H), 7.87 - 7.90 (m, 1H), 8.16 - 8.20 (m, 1H), 8.38 (s, br, 1H), 8.41 (t, 1H, *J* = 2 Hz); MS ((-ESI) *m/z* 321 (M-H)⁻. Anal. (C₁₉H₁₈N₂O₃) CHN.

20

EXAMPLE 31

3-(1,2-Dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)aniline

A solution of 5'-(3-Nitrophenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one (3.6g, 11mmol) in methanol (150ml) was shaken with 10% palladium on charcoal (1g) under a hydrogen atmosphere at 40 psi. The catalyst was filtered off and the solution was concentrated to obtain a residue. The residue was dissolved in ether and ethanolic hydrochloric acid was added. The solid thus obtained was recrystallized from methanol/ether to obtain the title compound (1.7g, 47%): m.p. 275-278°C; ¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.5-2.0 (m, 10H), 6.98 (d, *J* = 8.05Hz, 1H), 7.26 (d, *J* = 7.90 Hz,

25

- 51 -

1H), 7.45-7.62 (m, 4H), 7.67 (d, $J = 8.3$ Hz, 1H), 9.0-11.0 (s, 2H, br), 10.5 (s, 1H), MS ((+)-APCI) m/z 293 (M+H).

EXAMPLE 32**5-(3-Fluoro-5-nitrophenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one**

Prepared according to the procedure for example 18: mp. 191-193 °C; 1H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.66 - 2.07 (m, 10H), 7.07 (d, 1H, $J = 8$ Hz), 7.49 (dd, 1H, $J = 8, 1.8$ Hz), 7.59 - 7.64 (m, 2H), 7.89 (dt, 1H, $J = 8.1, 2.1$ Hz), 8.25 (s, 1H) and 8.54 (s, 1H); MS ((+)-APCI) m/z 341 [M+H]⁺.

10

EXAMPLE 33**5'-(3-Hydroxyphenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one**

Prepared according to the procedure for example 18: mp. 213 - 216 °C; 1H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.60-1.96 (m, 10H), 6.78 - 6.82 (m, 1H), 6.94 (d, 1H, $J = 8$ Hz), 7.01 - 7.04 (m, 2H), 7.23 (t, 1H, $J = 7.7$ Hz), 7.38 (d, 1H, $J = 8$ Hz), 7.61 (s, 1H), 8.91 (s, 1H) and 9.73 (s, 1H, br); MS ((+)-APCI) m/z 294 [M+H]⁺.

15

EXAMPLE 34**4-(1,2-Dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)-2-**

20

thiophenecarbonitrile**3-(Trimethylstannyl)-2-thiophenecarbonitrile**

A solution of 3-bromo-2-thiophenecarbonitrile (0.8 g, 4.3 mmol), tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.25 g, 0.2 mmol) and hexamethylditin (1.4 g, 4.3 mmol) in dimethoxyethane (5 cm³) was heated under reflux for 14 h then cooled to RT. The reaction mixture was absorbed onto florisil and purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, methylene chloride: hexane 1:9) to afford the title compound (1.04 g, 3.8 mmol, 90%) as a clear viscous oil: 1H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 0.35 (s, 9H), 7.56 (d, $J = 0.9$ Hz, 1H), 7.66 (d, $J = 0.9$ Hz, 1H).

25

- 52 -

A solution of the 5'-bromospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H] indol]-2'(1'H)-one (0.53 g, 1.9 mmol), dichlorobis(triphenylphosphine) palladium(II) (0.1 g, 0.14 mmol) and triphenylarsine (0.14 g, 0.47 mmol) in dimethoxyethane (8 cm³) was stirred under N₂ for 20 min.. To this mixture was then added 3-(trimethylstannyl)-2-thiophenecarbonitrile (0.64 g, 2.35 mmol). The solution was brought to reflux for 32 h. After cooling to room temperature the reaction mixture was absorbed onto florisil and purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, ethyl acetate: hexane 2:3) to afford the title compound (0.43 g, 1.39 mmol, 74%) as an off white solid: ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.56-2.1 (m, 10H), 6.97 (d, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 7.39 (dd, *J* = 8.03, 1.45 Hz, 1H), 7.57 (d, *J* = 1.45 Hz, 1H), 7.59 (d, *J* = 1.4 Hz, 1H), 7.84 (d, *J* = 1.4 Hz, 1H), 8.32 (br s, 1H); ¹³C-NMR (CDCl₃) δ 22.07, 26.56, 34.4 (t), 48.13 (s), 110.18 (d), 111.3, 114.75 (s), 122.92, 126.76 (d), 128.44 (s), 137.55 (d), 138.11, 142.71, 144.49, 182.13 (s); MS (EI) *m/z* 307 (M-H)⁺; Anal. (C₁₈H₁₆N₂OS) C, H, N.

15

EXAMPLE 35

5-(2'-oxo-2',3'-dihydrospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-2-thiophenecarbonitrile

5-Bromo-2-thiophenecarbonitrile. A mixture of 5-bromo-2-thiophenecarboxaldehyde (96.0g, 500 mmol), hydroxylamine hydrochloride (111.9 g, 500 mmol), pyridine (500 mL), and ethanol (500 mL) was heated under nitrogen at reflux for two hours. The reaction mixture was cooled to ambient temperature and concentrated *in vacuo* to give an oil. The crude product was triturated twice with ice water and the solid obtained was collected on a filter. A mixture of a portion of the above solid (44.31 g, 215 mmol), copper (II) acetate monohydrate (4.2 g, 21 mmol) in acetonitrile (1.4L) was heated at reflux for three hours. The solvent was removed *in vacuo* and the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate. The solution was washed with 5% aqueous sulfuric acid (2X30 mL), water (2X30 mL), brine (20 mL), and dried (MgSO₄). The solvent was removed *in vacuo* and the residue was dissolved in a minimum amount of chloroform (1L) and allowed to crystallize. The crystal obtained

- 53 -

was collected on a filter and the filtrate was concentrated and purified by a chromatography (silica gel, chloroform) to give the title compound as an off-white solid (31.5g combined, 58%): IR (film) cm^{-1} 2200; ^1H -NMR (CDCl_3) δ 7.39-7.38 (d, 1H, $J = 4.1$ Hz), 7.10 (d, 1H, $J = 4.0$ Hz); MS (EI) m/z 187 (M^+ , 98%) 189 (M^+ , 100%).

The title compound was prepared according to the procedure for example 18 using 5-bromo-2-thiophenecarbonitrile and (2'-oxo-2',3'-dihydrospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl) boronic acid: mp. 225-228°C; ^1H NMR ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$) δ 1.63 (m, 8H), 1.90 (m, 2H) 6.91 (d, 1H, $J = 8.13$ Hz), 7.55 (dd, 1H, $J = 8.13$, 1.76 Hz), 7.60 (d, 1H, $J = 4.17$ Hz), 7.75 (d, 1H, $J = 1.76$ Hz), 7.93 (d, 1H, $J = 4.17$ Hz), 10.51 (s, 1H); MS ((+)APCI) m/z 309 [$\text{M} + \text{H}$] $^+$.

EXAMPLE 36

4-Methyl-5-(2'-oxo-2',3'-dihydrospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-2-thiophene carbonitrile

Prepared according to the procedure for example 18: m.p. 200-203°C; ^1H NMR ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$) δ 1.63 (m, 8H), 1.87 (m, 2H), 2.27 (s, 3H), 6.95 (d, 1H, $J = 8.13$ Hz), 7.34 (dd, 1H, $J = 8.13$, 1.98 Hz) 7.54 (d, 1H, $J = 1.98$ Hz), 7.82 (s, 1H) 10.50 (s, 1H); MS ((+)APCI) m/z 323 [$\text{M} + \text{H}$] $^+$.

EXAMPLE 37

4-Ethyl-5-(2'-oxo-2',3'-dihydrospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-2-thiophenecarbonitrile

Prepared according to the procedure for example 18: mp 214 - 217 °C. ^1H NMR ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$) δ 10.55 (s, 1H), 7.95 (s, 1H), 7.51 (s, 1H), 7.33 - 7.30 (m, 1H), 6.98 - 6.96 (d, 2H $J = 8.0$ Hz), 2.67 - 2.62 (m, 2H), 1.89 - 1.86 (m, 2H), 1.69 - 1.55 (m, 8H), 1.20 - 1.15 (t, 3H); MS ((+)APCI) m/z 337 [$\text{M} + \text{H}$] $^+$. Anal.Calc. For $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{20}\text{N}_2\text{OS} \cdot 1/2 \text{H}_2\text{O}$: C, 69.54; H, 6.13 ; N, 8.11. Found: C, 69.51 ; H, 6.06; N, 7.57.

- 54 -

EXAMPLE 38

5-(1',2'-Dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-thiophene-3-carbonitrile

Prepared according to the procedure for example 18: m.p. 188 – 190 °C; ¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.5 – 2.0 (m, 10H), 6.89 (d, *J* = 7.91 Hz, 1H), 7.49 (dd, *J* = 7.91, 1.98 Hz, 1H), 7.75 (d, *J* = 1.76 Hz, 1H), 7.86 (d, *J* = 1.32 Hz, 1H), 8.44 (d, *J* = 1.32 Hz, 1H); MS (-ESI) *m/z* 307 (M-H).

EXAMPLE 39

10 **2-(1',2'-Dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-thiophene-2-carbonitrile**

Prepared according to the procedure for example 18: m.p. 207 – 9 °C; ¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.4 – 2.0 (m, 10H), 7.0 (d, *J* = 8.13 Hz, 1H), 7.48 (d, *J* = 5.27 Hz, 1H), 7.54 (dd, *J* = 8.13 Hz, 1.98 Hz, 1H), 7.71 (d, *J* = 5.49 Hz, 1H), 7.85 (d, *J* = 1.76 Hz, 1H), 10.6 (s, 1H); MS (-ESI) *m/z* 307 (M-H).

EXAMPLE 40

5-(1',2'-Dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-3-furancarbonitrile

20 Prepared according to the procedure for example 18: m.p. 243 – 245 °C. ¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 10.48 (s, 1H), 8.62 (d, 1H *J* = 0.7 Hz), 7.76 (d, 1H *J* = 1.5 Hz), 7.58 - 7.55 (dd, 1H), 7.33 (d, 1H *J* = 0.7 Hz), 6.92 - 6.90 (d, 1H *J* = 8.1 Hz), 1.87 - 1.83 (m, 2H), 1.73 - 1.53 (m, 8H). MS ((+)EI) *m/z* 292 (M+).

25

EXAMPLE 41

5-(5-Chloro-2-thienyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H] indol]-2(1H)-one

Prepared according to the procedure for example 18: m.p. 191-192°C; ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.6-2.1 (m, 10H), 6.85-6.95 (m, 2H), 6.98 (d, *J* = 4.0 Hz, 1H), 7.36 (dd, *J* = 7.5, 1.6 Hz, 1H), 7.53 (d, *J* = 0.9 Hz, 1H), 7.80 (br s, 1H); ¹³C-NMR (THF-

- 55 -

δ 21.35, 25.33, 33.12 (t), 48.32 (s), 110.40, 121.66, 121.96, 125.44, 127.25 (d), 128.17, 128.43, 136.92, 140.20, 143.43, 183.72 (s); MS (EI) m/z 318 (M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 42**5-(5-Acetyl-2-thienyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one**

Prepared according to the procedure for example 18: m.p. 195-196 °C, ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.6-2.1 (m, 10H), 2.58 (s, 3H), 6.95 (d, J = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.25 (d, J = 4.0 Hz, 1H), 7.54 (dd, J = 8.1, 1.7 Hz, 1H), 7.66 (d, J = 4.0 Hz, 1H), 7.7 (d, J = 1.7 Hz, 1H), 7.9 (br s, 1H); ¹³C NMR (CDCl₃) δ 22.24, 26.19 (t), 27.59 (q), 33.99 (t), 49.02 (s), 111.39, 123.45, 124.12, 127.02 (d), 128.59 (s), 134.79 (d), 137.92, 142.23, 143.41, 154.47, 184.51, 191.76 (s); MS (EI) m/z 326 (M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 43**5-(2'-oxo-2',3'-dihydrospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-2-nitro-thiophene**

Prepared according to the procedure for example 11: mp. 242 °C (decomp.); ¹H NMR (DMSO- d_6) δ 1.62 - 1.67 (m, 6H), 1.90 - 1.99 (m, 2H), 6.94 (d, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.64 (d, 1H, J = 4.5 Hz), 7.67 (dd, 1H, J = 8.2, 1.8 Hz), 7.86 (d, 1H, J = 1.5 Hz), 8.15 (d, 1H, J = 4.5 Hz), 10.62 (s, 1H); MS (EI) m/z 328 (M)⁺.

EXAMPLE 44**5'-(5-Nitro-1H-pyrrol-2-yl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one**

2-(1',2'-Dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-1H-pyrrole-1-carboxylic acid, tert-butyl ester

To a solution of 5'-bromo-spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-indolin]-2'-one (3.4 g, 12 mmol) in 1,2-DME (100 mL) under a nitrogen atmosphere was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (70 mg, 5 mol%). After 15 min, 2-borono-1H-pyrrole-1-carboxylic acid, 1-tert butyl ester (1.3 eq, 3.31 g, 15.6 mmol) and a solution of K₂CO₃ (2.3 eq, 3.83 g, 27.6 mmol) in water (5 mL) were added

- 56 -

sequentially. The solution was heated to 80 °C for 3 h and allowed to cool. The reaction mixture was poured into water (200 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (2 × 100 mL). The organic layers were combined, washed with brine (150 mL) and dried over MgSO₄. The solution was filtered, concentrated *in vacuo*, and the residue was
5 purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (eluting with 30% EtOAc/hexane) to give subtitled compound: (3.4 g, 76%) as a white powder, mp 177 °C. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃; 300 MHz) δ 1.38 (s, 9 H), 1.59-1.93 (m, 10 H), 6.18 (m, 1 H), 6.23 (t, 1H, 3 Hz), 6.91 (d, 1 H, *J*=8 Hz), 7.21 (d, 1 H, *J*=8 Hz), 7.34 (m, 1 H), 7.44 (s, 1 H), 8.33 (br s, 1 H, D₂Oex). MS ((+)-APCI) *m/z* 367 [(M+H)⁺]. Anal. Calcd for
10 C₂₂H₂₆N₂O₃; C, 72.11; H, 7.15; N, 7.64. Found: C, 71.7; H, 7.16; N, 7.5.

2-(1',2'-Dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-5-nitro-1H-pyrrole-1-carboxylic acid, tert-butyl carbamate.

To a solution of 2-(1',2'-dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-1H-pyrrole-1-carboxylic acid, tert-butyl ester (72 mg, 0.2 mmol) in MeCN (5 mL)
15 at room temperature was added silver nitrate (1.05 eq, 35 mg, 0.2 mmol). After 5 min, acetyl chloride (1.0 eq, 15 mg, 0.2 mmol) in MeCN (5 mL) was added and the solution was allowed to stir for 16h. Dichloromethane (10 mL) was added, and the solution was filtered through celite and washed sequentially with water, sat. NaHCO₃, water and brine (10 mL of each). The solution was dried over MgSO₄, filtered, and
20 concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (eluting with 40% EtOAc/hexane) to give the subtitled compound (56 mg, 70%) as a yellow oil which crystallized from acetone/hexane, mp 163 °C (dec).

2-(1',2'-Dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-5-nitro-1H-pyrrole-1-carboxylic acid, tert-butyl ester (0.31 g, 0.85 mmol) was placed in a 5 mL
25 round bottomed flask stoppered with a rubber septum and equipped with nitrogen inlet and a needle to allow gaseous outflow. A vigorous flow of nitrogen was maintained as the flask was placed in an oil bath and heated to 200 °C. After 5 min at this temperature, the flask was removed from the oil bath and allowed to cool. The black residue was washed into a larger flask with acetone and adsorbed onto a small

- 57 -

amount of silica gel. Purification by flash column chromatography on silica gel (eluting with 40% EtOAc/hexane) gave the title carbamate (0.20 g, 85%) as a yellow oil which crystallized from acetone/hexane, mp 278 °C (dec). ¹H NMR (DMSO-*d*₆; 300 MHz) δ 1.55-1.87 (m, 10H), 6.80 (d, 1H, *J*=4 Hz), 6.91 (d, 1H, *J*=8 Hz), 7.27 (d, 1H, *J*=4 Hz), 7.77 (dd, 1H, *J*=8, 1 Hz), 8.04 (d, 1H, *J*=1 Hz), 10.51 (s, 1 H), 13.21 (br s, 1 H). MS ((+)-APCI) *m/z* 312 [(M+H)⁺]. Anal. Calcd for C₁₇H₁₇N₃O₃: C, 65.58; H, 5.5; N, 13.5. Found: C, 65.57; H, 5.54; N, 13.44.

EXAMPLE 45

10 5'-(5-Nitro-1-methyl-pyrrol-2-yl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one
5'-(1-Methyl-pyrrol-2-yl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one

A mixture of 5'-(1H-pyrrol-2-yl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one (0.46 g, 1.7 mmol) and potassium carbonate (5 eq, 1.18 g, 8.6 mmol) in DMF (2 mL) at room temperature was treated with a solution of iodomethane (3 eq, 0.32 g, 5.1 mmol) in DMF (1 mL). The solution was stirred 16 h at room temperature, then poured into water (10 mL). EtOAc (15 mL) was added, the layers were separated, and the aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (2 × 100 mL). The organic layers were combined, washed with brine (15 mL) and dried over MgSO₄. The solution was filtered, concentrated *in vacuo*, and the residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (eluting with 40% EtOAc/hexane) to give the subtitled compound (0.44 g, 76%) as a white powder, mp 148-9 °C. ¹H NMR (DMSO-*d*₆; 400 MHz) δ 1.50-1.62 (m, 3 H), 1.62-1.82 (m, 5 H), 1.83-1.94 (m, 2 H), 3.11 (s, 3 H), 6.08 (m, 1H), 6.42 (m, 1 H), 6.79 (m, 1 H), 6.97 (d, 1 H, *J*=8.1 Hz), 7.51 (dd, 1 H, *J*=8.1, 1.8 Hz), 7.70 (d, 1 H, *J*=1.7 Hz), 11.20 (br s, 1 H). Anal. Calcd for C₁₈H₂₀N₂O₄: C, 77.11; H, 7.19; N, 9.98. Found: C, 76.44; H, 7.21; N, 9.96.

A mixture of 5'-(1-methyl-pyrrol-2-yl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one (0.36 g, 1.3 mmol) and silver nitrate (1.1 eq, 0.24 g, 1.4 mmol) in acetonitrile (10 mL) at room temperature was treated with acetyl chloride (1.1 eq, 0.1 mL, 1.4 mmol). The mixture was stirred 1 h at this temperature and then

- 58 -

dichloromethane (30 mL) was added and the mixture was filtered through celite. The organic phase was washed sequentially with water (20 mL), sat. aq. NaHCO₃ (20 mL), and brine (20 mL). The solution was dried over MgSO₄, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (eluting with 40% EtOAc/hexane) to give the title compound (21 mg, 5%) as a yellow powder, mp 210 °C. ¹H NMR (DMSO-*d*₆; 300 MHz) δ 1.55-1.97 (m, 10H), 3.15 (s, 3H), 6.77 (dd, 1H, *J*=4.2, 2.3 Hz), 7.05 (d, 1H, *J*=8.2 Hz), 7.21 (dd, 1H, *J*=4.2, 2.3 Hz), 7.83 (dd, 1H, *J*=1.8, 8.2 Hz), 8.0 (d, 1H, *J*=1.8 Hz), 13.0 (br s, 1 H). MS ((+)-APCI) *m/z* 326 [(M+H)⁺]. Anal. Calcd for C₁₈H₁₉N₃O₃: C, 65.45; H, 5.89; N, 12.91. Found: C, 64.66; H, 5.76; N, 12.52.

EXAMPLE 46

5'-(1H-Indol-4-yl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one

Prepared according to the procedure for example 18: mp 211-213 °C; ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ 8.32 (s, 1H), 7.84 (s, 1H), 7.81 (d, 1H, *J* = 1.8 Hz), 7.55 (dd, 1 H, *J* = 6.2, 1.8 Hz), 7.40 (dt, 1H, *J* = 6.2, 1.0 Hz), 7.29 - 7.28 (m, 1H), 7.27 (t, 1H, *J* = 3.1 Hz), 7.18 (dd, 1H, *J* = 6.4, 0.9 Hz), 7.00 (dd, 1H, *J* = 7.5, 0.4 Hz), 6.72 - 6.71 (m, 1H), 2.00 - 1.59 (m, 10H); MS ((+)-APCI) [M+H]⁺ @ *m/z* 317.

20

EXAMPLE 47

3-(1',2'-Dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol-5'-yl] benzonitrile

A solution of 3-(1',2'-Dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol-5'-yl)benzaldehyde oxime (0.48 g, 1.49 mmol) in chloroform (10 cm³) was treated with selenium dioxide (0.38 g, 3.50 mmol) and heated under reflux. After 16 h, the mixture was concentrated and the residue purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc: hexane 1:4) and the product re-crystallized from EtOAc-hexane to afford the title compound (0.161 g, 0.53 mmol, 35%) as a white solid: mp. 190 - 191 °C; ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.59 - 1.87 (m, 6H), 1.88 - 2.09 (m, 4H), 7.03 (d, 1H, *J* = 8 Hz), 7.42

25

- 59 -

(dd, 1H, $J = 8$, 2 Hz), 7.54 (t, 1H, $J = 8$ Hz), 7.58 - 7.65 (m, 2H), 7.78 (dt, 1H, $J = 7$, 2 Hz), 7.83 (m, 1H), 8.26 (s, 1H, br); MS ((+) ESI) m/z 303 ($M + H$)⁺.

EXAMPLE 48

5 3-(1,2-Dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)-5-fluorobenzonitrile

To a solution of 3,5-dibromofluorobenzene in diethyl ether (100 cm³) at -78 °C was added *n*-butyl lithium (2.5 M, 8 cm³, 20 mmol) dropwise. After 30 min. the mixture was treated with DMF (20 cm³) in diethyl ether (10 cm³) and stirring was continued at -78 °C. After 30 min. the mixture was quenched with dilute HCl aq.,
10 separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc. The combined organic layers were combined, washed with water, brine, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated to give 3-fluoro-5-bromobenzaldehyde (4.0 g, 19.7 mmol, 100%) as an oil: ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ *inter alia* 7.50 - 7.53 (m, 2H), 7.82 (s, 1H) and 9.93 (m, 1H); MS (EI) m/z 202, 204 [M^+].

15 To a solution of the last cited compound (4.0 g, 19.7 mmol) in ethanol:water (8:2, 50 cm³), was added sodium acetate (1.72 g, 21 mmol) and hydroxylamine hydrochloride (1.45 g, 21 mmol), and the mixture was heated under reflux. After 30 min., the mixture was cooled, evaporated and the residue partitioned between water and EtOAc. The aqueous layer was re-extracted with EtOAc and the combined
20 organic layers were washed with water, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, brine, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated to give 3-fluoro-5-bromobenzaldehyde oxime (3.76 g, 17.24 mmol, 87%) which was used without further purification: ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 7.24 - 7.27 (m, 2H), 7.50 (s, 1H), 7.68 (s, 1H) and 8.04 (s, 1H); MS (EI) m/z 217 [M^+].

25 The above oxime (3.76 g, 17.24 mmol) and copper (II) acetate (370 mg) were dissolved in acetonitrile (100 cm³) under nitrogen and heated under reflux. After 5h, the mixture was evaporated, the residue taken into EtOAc, washed with sulfuric acid (1N), water, brine, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated to give 3-fluoro-5-

- 60 -

bromobenzonitrile (3.08 g, 15.39 mmol, 89%) which was used without further purification.

The above bromide (3.0 g, 15 mmol) and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0) (0.86 g, 0.75 mmol) were dissolved in dimethoxyethane (130 cm³) under nitrogen. After 15 min. (2'-oxo-2, 3-dihydrospiro[cyclohexane-1, 3'-[3H] indol] -5'-yl) boronic acid (2.82 g, 11.5 mmol) and sodium carbonate (3.1 g, 29.3 mmol) dissolved in water (40 cm³) were added, and the mixture heated under reflux. After 8h the mixture was cooled, poured into water and extracted with EtOAc (x3). The combined organic layers were then washed with water, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated. The residue was then purified by column chromatography (EtOAc: hexane, gradient elution), and the product recrystallized from methanol to give 3-(1,2-Dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)-5-fluorobenzonitrile (1.78 g, 5.55 mmol, 48%); mp 199 - 205 °C; ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.64 -2.03 (m, 10H), 7.03 (d, 1H, *J* = 8 Hz), 7.31 (dt, 1H, *J* = 7.7 and 1.6 Hz), 7.41 (dd, 1H, *J* = 8, 1.7 Hz), 7.49 (dt, 1H, *J* = 9.6, 2 Hz), 7.58 (d, 1H, *J* = 2 Hz), 7.64 (s, 1H) and 8.37 (s, 1H); MS (EI) *m/z* 320 [M⁺].

EXAMPLE 49

3-(1,2-Dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)-4-fluorobenzonitrile

Prepared according to the procedure for example 18: m.p. 205 - 206 °C. ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 10.47 (s, 1H), 8.08 - 8.06 (dd, 1H), 7.89 - 7.85 (m, 1H), 7.65 (s, 1H), 7.54 - 7.49 (m, 1H), 7.43 - 7.40 (tt, 1H), 6.95 - 6.93 (d, 1H *J* = 7.9 Hz), 1.97 - 1.83 (m, 2H), 1.69 - 1.55 (m, 8H); MS (EI) *m/z* 320 (M⁺)

EXAMPLE 50

3-(1'-Diethoxymethyl-1', 2'-dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-5-fluorobenzonitrile

A solution of 3-(1', 2'-dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-5-fluorobenzonitrile (1.0 eq, 0.27 g, 0.84 mmol) in triethylorthoformate (2 mL, 12

- 61 -

mmol) was heated to 150 °C for 1 h. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool, the excess triethylorthoformate was removed *in vacuo*, and the residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (eluting with 10% EtOAc/hexane) to give the title compound (0.2 g, 56%) as a white powder, mp 146 °C. ¹H NMR (DMSO-*d*₆; 400 MHz) δ 1.13 (t, 6 H, *J*= 7 Hz), 1.60-1.96 (m, 10 H), 3.48 (m, 2 H), 3.66 (m, 2 H), 6.17 (s, 1H), 7.35 (d, 1 H, *J*= 8.3 Hz), 7.68 (dd, 1 H, *J*= 2.0, 8.3 Hz), 7.77 (ddd, 1 H, *J*= 1.3, 2.4 Hz), 7.89 (d, 1 H, *J*= 2.0 Hz), 7.92 (dt, 1 H, *J*= 2.4, 10.5 Hz), 8.08 (dd, 1 H, *J*= 1.3, 2.9 Hz). MS ((+)-EI) *m/z* 422 [M⁺]. Anal. Calcd for C₂₃H₂₇FN₂O₃: C, 71.07; H, 6.44; N, 6.63. Found: C, 70.75; H, 6.48; N, 6.52.

10

EXAMPLE 51**3-(7'-Bromo-1', 2'-dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-5-fluoro-benzonitrile**

A mixture of 3-(1',2'-dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-5-fluorobenzonitrile (0.40 g, 1.23 mmol) and potassium acetate (0.13 g, 1.3 mmol) in glacial acetic acid (3 mL) at room temperature was treated with a solution of bromine (1.05 eq, 0.21 g, 1.3 mmol) in a glacial acetic acid (3 mL). After stirring for 1 h the mixture was poured onto ice (20 g). The layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with dichloromethane (2 × 10 mL). The organic layers were combined, washed sequentially with 10% aqueous sodium thiosulfate (20 mL), water (2 × 10 mL), saturated sodium bicarbonate (10 mL) and brine (15 mL) and dried over MgSO₄. The solution was filtered, concentrated *in vacuo*, and the residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (eluting with 30% EtOAc/hexane) to give the title compound (0.21 g, 43%) as an oil which crystallized upon addition of 10% EtOAc/hexanes, mp 217 °C. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃; 300 MHz) δ 1.56-2.04 (m, 10 H), 7.33 (dddd, 1 H, *J*= 1.25, 2.3, 3.6 and 9.0 Hz), 7.45 (m, 1 H), 7.47 (m, 2 H), 7.54 (m, 1H), 7.60 (m, 1 H). MS ((-)-ESI) *m/z* 399 [M⁻]. Anal. Calcd for C₂₀H₁₆BrFN₂O₁: C, 60.17; H, 4.04; N, 7.02. Found: C, 60.03; H, 4.08; N, 6.83.

25

- 62 -

EXAMPLE 52

3-(7'-Nitro-1', 2'-dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-5-fluoro-benzonitrile

A mixture of 3-(1',2'-dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-
5 5-fluorobenzonitrile (0.19 g, 0.6 mmol) and silver nitrate 0.11 g, 0.6 mmol) in
trifluoroacetic acid (5 mL) was stirred 1 h at room temperature and then poured onto
ice (20 g). Ether (15 mL) was added, the layers were separated, and the aqueous layer
was extracted with ether (3 × 10 mL). The organic layers were combined and washed
sequentially with water (2 × 20 mL), saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ (20 mL) and brine
10 (15 mL) and dried over MgSO₄. The solution was filtered, concentrated *in vacuo*, and
the residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (eluting with
20% EtOAc/hexane) to give the title compound (0.2 g, 94%) as a white powder, mp
196 °C. ¹H NMR (DMSO-*d*₆; 400 MHz) δ 1.46-1.58 (m, 1 H), 1.62-1.77 (m, 5 H),
1.83 (m, 2 H), 1.92-2.20 (m, 2 H), 7.85 (dddd, 1H, *J*= 1.3, 2.4, 3.7 and 8.6 Hz), 8.12
15 (dddd, 1 H, *J*= 1.8, 2.4, 4.2 and 10.5 Hz), 8.23 (m, 2 H), 8.36 (d, 1 H, *J*= 2.0 Hz),
11.17 (bs, 1 H). MS ((-)-APCI) *m/z* 365 [M⁺]. Anal. Calcd for C₂₀H₁₆FN₃O₃: C,
65.75; H, 4.41; N, 11.5. Found: C, 65.4; H, 4.54; N, 11.3.

EXAMPLE 53

20 **3-(7'-Amino-1', 2'-dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-5-fluoro-benzonitrile**

To a solution of 3-(7'-nitro-1', 2'-dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-
[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-5-fluorobenzonitrile (1.0 eq, 0.16 g, 0.4 mmol) in glacial acetic acid
(4 mL) at room temperature was added a solution of tin (II) chloride dihydrate (0.25
25 g, 1.1 mmol) in hydrochloric acid (2 mL). The yellow mixture was boiled for 30 min
at which point the yellow color disappeared. After cooling to room temperature, 1N
HCl (10 mL) and ether (20 mL) were added. The layers were separated and the
aqueous phase was extracted with ether (2 × 20 mL). The organic layers were
combined, washed sequentially with water (2 × 20 mL), saturated aqueous NaHCO₃,

- 63 -

(20 mL), and brine (20 mL). The solution was dried over MgSO_4 , filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (eluting with 40% EtOAc/hexane) to give the title compound (70 mg, 50%) as an oil which crystallized upon addition of 10% EtOAc/hexanes, mp 241-3 °C. ^1H NMR ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$; 400 MHz) δ 1.50-1.75 (m, 8H), 1.82-1.95(m, 2H), 4.98 (s, 2H), 6.90 (d, 1H, $J = 1.8$ Hz), 7.09 (d, 1H, $J = 1.5$ Hz), 7.75 (m, 2H), 7.90 ('s', 1H), 9.96 (bs, 1H). MS ((+)-APCI) m/z 336 [(M+H) $^+$]. Anal. Calcd for $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{18}\text{FN}_3\text{O}$: C, 71.63; H, 5.41; N, 12.18. Found: C, 71.16; H, 5.58; N, 12.18.

10

EXAMPLE 54**5-(3-cyano-4-fluorophenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one**

Prepared according to the procedure for example 18: mp. 239-242 °C; ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 1.64 - 1.82 (m, 6H), 1.88 - 2.04 (m, 2H), 7.00 (d, 1H, $J = 8$ Hz), 7.29 - 7.31 (m, 1H), 7.36 (dd, 1H, $J = 8.8, 2$ Hz), 7.54 (d, 1H, $J = 1.5$ Hz), 7.73 - 7.78 (m, 2H) and 8.19 (s, 1H, br); MS ((+)-APCI) m/z 321 [M+H] $^+$.

15

EXAMPLE 55**5'-(3-Chlorophenyl)spiro[4,4-dimethylcyclohexane-1',3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one**

A solution of 3,3-dimethylglutaric anhydride in dry THF (60 cm^3) was added over 30 min. to lithium aluminum hydride in dry THF (300 cm^3) under nitrogen at 0°C. The mixture was then brought gradually up-to reflux. After 3 h, the mixture was cooled, treated with water (3.3 cm^3), sodium hydroxide solution (15%, 3.3 cm^3) and water (9.9 cm^3). The mixture was then filtered, the precipitate extracted with EtOAc (x3), and the combined organics evaporated to afford 3,3-dimethyl-1,5-pentanediol (quantitative yield); ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 0.95 (s, 6H), 1.57 (t, 4H, $J = 6.3$ Hz), 3.75 (t, 4H, $J = 6.3$ Hz).

25

A solution of 3,3-dimethyl-1,5-pentanediol (8.4 g, 63.5 mmol) in dry pyridine (180 cm^3) was cooled to 0 °C under nitrogen and treated over 5h with a solution of *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride (26.7 g, 140 mmol) in dry pyridine (100 cm^3). The mixture

- 64 -

was then allowed to warm up to room temperature. After 16 h, the mixture was poured into ice/water and extracted with EtOAc (x3). The combined organics were washed with dil. HCl (30%), saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate, brine, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated to afford 1,5-bis-(3,3-dimethylpentane)-*p*-toluenesulfonate (19.8 g, 45 mmol) which was used without further purification: ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ *inter alia* 0.85 (s, 6H), 1.56 (t, 4H, *J* = 7.0 Hz), 2.45 (s, 6H), 4.02 (t, 4H, *J* = 7.0 Hz), 7.35 (d, 4H, *J* = 8.0 Hz), 7.77 (d, 4H, *J* = 8.0 Hz); MS ((+) APCI) *m/z* 441 (M + H)⁺.

A solution of 1,5-bis-(3,3-dimethylpentane)-*p*-toluenesulfonate (53.0 g, 120 mmol) and sodium iodide (72.0 g, 480 mmol) was dissolved with stirring in dry acetone (500 cm³). After 16 h at reflux the mixture was cooled, poured into water and extracted with diethylether (x3). The combined organic extracts were washed with water, dried (MgSO₄), and evaporated to afford 3,3-dimethyl-1,5-diiodopentane (41.3 g, 117 mmol) as a yellow oil that was used without further purification: ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ *inter alia* 0.90 (s, 6H), 1.87 - 1.91 (m, 4H), 3.09 - 3.15 (m, 4H).

A solution of oxindole (2.0 g, 15 mmol) dissolved in dry THF (50 cm³) under nitrogen was cooled to -60 °C and treated with *n*-butyllithium (2.5 M in hexanes, 15 cm³, 37.5 mmol) followed by *N,N,N',N'*-tetramethylethylenediamine (5.66 g, 37.5 mmol). After 20 min. 3,3-dimethyl-1,5-diiodopentane (15.8 g, 45 mmol) in dry THF (10 cm³) was added and the mixture was allowed to warm up to room temperature. After 16 h, the mixture was poured into water, extracted with EtOAc (x3), washed with water, dilute HCl (10%), water, brine, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated. The residue was then subjected to column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc: hexane, 1:6) to afford spiro[4,4-dimethylcyclohexane-1',3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one (0.37 g, 1.62 mmol, 11%): ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.08 (s, 3H), 1.10 (s, 3H), 1.23 - 1.30 (m, 2H), 1.54 - 1.68 (m, 4H), 1.94 - 2.04 (m, 2H), 6.94 (d, 1H, *J* = 7.7 Hz), 7.01 (t, 1H, *J* = 7.6 Hz), 7.20 (t, 1H, *J* = 7.7 Hz), 7.42 (d, 1H, *J* = 7.4 Hz), 8.76 (s, 1H, br); MS (EI) *m/z* 229 (M)⁺.

To a solution of the last cited compound (0.37 g, 1.62 mmol) and sodium acetate (0.14 g, 1.7 mmol) in acetic acid (5 cm³) was added bromine (0.27 g, 1.7

- 65 -

mmol) in acetic acid (2 cm³). After 30 min. the mixture was poured into sodium hydroxide solution (2N) and extracted with dichloromethane (x2). The organic extracts were washed with water, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated to afford 5'-bromospiro[4,4-dimethylcyclohexane-1',3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one (0.435 g, 1.41 mmol, 87%) which was used without further purification: ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.08 (s, 3H), 1.49 - 1.64 (m, 4H), 1.69 - 1.74 (m, 2H), 1.89 - 1.98 (m, 2H), 6.77 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.2 Hz), 7.33 (dd, 1H, *J* = 8.2, 1.8 Hz), 7.48 (d, 1H, *J* = 1.7 Hz), 7.71 (s, 1H, br); MS ((+)APCI) *m/z* 308 (M + H)⁺.

The last cited compound (0.56 g, 1.81 mmol) and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine) palladium(0) (0.1 g, 0.08 mmol) were dissolved in dimethoxyethane (20 cm³) under nitrogen. After 20 min. 3-chlorophenylboronic acid (0.57 g, 3.64 mmol) and sodium carbonate (0.97 g, 9.15 mmol) were added and the mixture heated under reflux. After 16h the mixture was cooled, poured into water and extracted with EtOAc (x2). The combined organic layers were washed with sodium hydroxide (2N), water, brine, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated. The residue was then subjected to column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc: hexanes, 1:5) to afford the title compound which was triturated with hexane to give a solid (0.26 g, 0.77 mmol, 43%): mp. 184 - 185 °C; ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.11 (s, 6H), 1.57 - 1.80 (m, 6H), 1.45 - 2.03 (m, 2H), 6.98 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.0 Hz), 7.29 - 7.44 (m, 4H), 5.52 - 7.55 (m, 2H), 8.12 (s, 1H, br); MS ((+)APCI) *m/z* 340 (M + H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 56

5'-(3-Nitrophenyl)spiro[4,4-dimethylcyclohexane-1',3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one

To a solution of 5'-bromospiro[4,4-dimethylcyclohexane-1',3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one (0.29 g, 0.95 mmol) in dimethoxyethane (15 cm³) was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.053 g, 0.046 mmol). After 20 min. 3-nitrophenylboronic acid (0.32 g, 1.9 mmol) and sodium carbonate (0.5 g, 4.75 mmol) in water (7.5 cm³) and the mixture heated under reflux. After 16 h, the mixture was cooled, poured into water and extracted with EtOAc (x2). The combined organic

- 66 -

layers were washed with sodium hydroxide solution (2N), water, brine, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated. The residue was then subjected to column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc: hexanes, gradient elution), then the product was triturated with hexane to afford the title compound (0.12 g, 0.35 mmol, 37%) as a yellow solid: mp. 230 -
5 231 °C; ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.18 - 1.24 (m, 6H), 1.57 - 1.86 (m, 6H), 1.94 - 2.03 (m, 2H), 7.03 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.0 Hz), 7.48 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.0 Hz), 7.59 - 7.64 (m, 2H), 7.87 (d, 1H, *J* = 7.7 Hz), 8.06 (s, 1H, br), 8.19 (d, 1H, *J* = 7.7 Hz), 8.40 (s, 1H); MS ((+)APCI) *m/z* 351 (M + H)⁺.

10

EXAMPLE 57

2,3,5,6-Tetrahydro-5-(3-nitrophenyl)spiro[3H-indole-3,4-[4H]pyran]-2(1H)-one

To a solution of sodium iodide (64 g, 0.43 mol) in acetone under N₂ was added 2-bromoethyl ether (20 g, 0.086 mol), causing a white solid to precipitate. After 16 h the mixture was filtered and the filtrate concentrated. Dichloromethane
15 was added to the residue which was filtered, the cake further washed with dichloromethane, the combined organic layers were dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated to give 2-iodoethyl ether (26.61 g, 0.0816 mol, 95%) as a colorless oil: ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 3.26 (t, 2H, *J* = 7 Hz), 3.78 (t, 2H, *J* = 7 Hz).

A solution of oxindole (5.00 g, 37.5 mmol) in anhydrous THF under N₂ was
20 cooled to -20 °C. *n*-butyllithium (2.5 M in hexanes, 30 cm³, 75.1 mmol) was added drop-wise followed by *N,N,N',N'*-tetramethylethylenediamine (11.4 cm³). After 20 min. a solution of 2-iodoethyl ether (36 g, 112 mmol) in anhydrous THF (20 cm³) was added slowly. The mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature, then after 16 h was brought to reflux. After 5 h the mixture was cooled then poured into water,
25 extracted with EtOAc (x 2), the combined organic layers were washed with dil. HCl (pH 1), water (x 2), dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, acetone: hexane 1:5) to afford the title compound (0.78 g, 3.82 mmol, 10%) as a white solid: ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.84 - 1.95 (m, 4H),

- 67 -

3.91 - 3.96 (m, 2H), 4.21 - 4.27 (m, 2H), 6.89 - 6.92 (m, 1H), 7.06 (t, 1H, $J = 7$, 1 Hz), 7.22 (t, 1H, $J = 7$, 1 Hz), 7.35 - 7.38 (m, 1H).

A solution of the above product (0.78 g, 3.82 mmol) and sodium acetate (0.32 g, 4.02 mmol) in acetic acid (10 cm³) was treated with bromine (0.64 g, 4.02 mmol) in acetic acid (2 cm³). After 30 min. the mixture was poured into sat. sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and extracted with EtOAc (x 2) washed with water, sat. sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, water, dried (MgSO₄), and evaporated to give the title compound (0.59 g, 2 mmol, 54%) as an off-white solid which was used without further purification: ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.83 - 2.00 (m, 4H), 3.91 - 4.03 (m, 2H), 4.22 - 4.32 (m, 2H), 6.86 (d, 1H, $J = 7$ Hz), 7.38 - 7.45 (m, 1H), 7.52 (d, 1H, $J = 1$ Hz), 8.36 (s, 1H, br); MS ((+)ESI) m/z 282 (M + H)⁺.

A solution of the above product (0.58 g, 2.04 mmol) and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0.11 g, 0.09 mmol) in dimethoxyethane (16 cm³) was stirred under N₂ for 20 min.. To this mixture was then added 3-nitrophenylboronic acid (0.63 g, 4.06 mmol) and potassium carbonate (1.68 g) in water (7 cm³). After 3 h at reflux the mixture was cooled, poured into water and extracted EtOAc (x 3). The combined organic extracts were washed with water, brine, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated. The residue was then subjected to column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc: hexane, 1:2) to provide the title compound (0.19 g, 0.58 mmol, 28 %). A sample which was further purified by preparative LC (Primesphere C18, 10 micron, 50 x 250 mm, MeCN: H₂O 46:54, 100 cm³/min., RT 7.57 min.) had the following properties: mp >250 °C, ¹H NMR (acetone-d₆) δ 1.78 - 1.88 (m, 2H), 1.92 - 2.01 (m, 2H), 3.85 - 3.94 (m, 2H), 4.12 - 4.23 (2H), 7.08 - 7.13 (m, 1H), 7.62 - 7.69 (m, 1H), 7.70 - 7.79 (m, 1H), 7.92 - 7.97 (m, 1H), 8.13 - 8.23 (m, 2H), 8.45 - 8.51 (m, 1H), 9.55 (s, 1H, br); MS (EI) m/z 341 (M)⁺.

EXAMPLE 58

5'-(5-Chloro-3-methylbenzo[b]thien-2-yl)spiro [cyclo-hexane-1,3'-[3H] indol]-2'(1'H)-one

- 68 -

A solution of the 2-bromo-5-chloro-3-methylbenzo[b]-thiophene (0.28 g, 1.1 mmol) and tetrakis-(triphenylphosphine) palladium (0.13 g, 0.1 mmol) in dimethoxyethane (8 cm³) was stirred under N₂ for 20 min.. To this mixture was then added (2'-oxo-2, 3-dihydrospiro[cyclohexane-1, 3'- [3H] indol] -5'-yl) boronic acid (0.32 g, 1.3 mmol) and sodium carbonate (0.35 g, 3.3 mmol) in water (4 cm³). The solution was brought to reflux for 12 h then cooled to RT, poured into water and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 50 cm³). The combined organic extracts were washed with water, brine, dried (MgSO₄), and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, CH₂Cl₂) to afford the title compound (0.18 g, 0.47 mmol, 45 %)
5 as a white solid: m.p. 256-258 °C, ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.47-1.97 (m, 10H), 2.42 (s, 3H), 6.99 (d, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 7.39 (d, *J* = 1.6 Hz, 1H), 7.42 (d, *J* = 1.2 Hz, 1H), 7.6 (s, 1H), 7.85 (d, *J* = 1.9 Hz, 1H), 7.99 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 10.53 (s, 1H); ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 12.84 (q), 20.96, 25.08, 32.88 (t), 47.23 (s), 109.98, 121.99, 124.25, 124.71, 125.01 (d), 126.47, 126.59, 129.17, 130.01, 136.51, 140.42, 141.79,
10 142.76, 181.74 (s); MS (EI) *m/z* 380 (M-H)⁺.
15

EXAMPLE 59

5-(3-Fluoro-4-nitrophenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one

The title compound was prepared from (2'-oxo-2,3-dihydrospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)boronic acid (3.2 g, 12.5 mmol) and 4-bromo-2-fluoro-nitrobenzene (3 g, 13.6 mmol) as described for example 18 (0.7 g, 16%) as a yellow solid: mp. 213-215 °C; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.5 - 1.8 (m, 8H), 1.8 - 2.0 (m, 2H), 6.96 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.13 Hz), 7.68 (dd, 1H, *J* = 8.13, 1.76 Hz), 7.74 (dd, 1H, *J* = 8.68, 1.76 Hz), 7.86 (d, 1H, *J* = 1.98 Hz), 7.92 (dd, 1H, *J* = 13.4, 1.76 Hz), 8.18 (t, 1H, *J* = 8.46 Hz) and 10.52 (s, 1H); MS (EI) *m/z* = 340 (M⁺).
20
25

EXAMPLE 60

4-(1,2-Dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)-2-furancarbonitrile

- 69 -

A solution of 3-bromo-5-cyano-furan (0.75 g, 4.4 mmol), and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.4 g) in ethylene glycol dimethyl ether (20 cm³) was stirred under N₂ for 20 minutes. To this mixture was then added (spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one-5-yl) boronic acid (1.6 g, 6.5 mmol) and sodium acetate (1.4 g, 13.1 mmol) in water (5 cm³). The solution was brought to reflux for 18 hours and then cooled to room temperature, poured into 2N NaOH and extracted with EtOAc (x 3). The combined extracts were washed with water, brine, dried (MgSO₄), and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc, hexane) to afford the title compound (0.45 g, 36%) as an off-white solid. mp: 240 - 242 °C; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 10.4 (s, 1H), 8.5 (s, 1H), 8.2 (s, 1H), 7.7 (s, 1H), 7.5 (dd, 1H, J = 1.5 6.5 Hz), 6.9 (d, 1H, J = 8.0 Hz), 2.0 - 1.6 (m, 10H); MS (EI) M⁺ @ m/z 292.

EXAMPLE 61

5-[4-Fluoro-3-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one

The title compound was prepared from (2'-oxo-2,3-dihydrospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)boronic acid (2.5 g, 10 mmol) and 5-bromo-2-fluoro-trifluoromethylbenzene (2 g, 8 mmol) as described for example 18, to afford the title compound (0.87 g, 30%) as a solid: mp. 222 °C; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.5 - 1.8 (m, 8 H), 1.8 - 2.0 (m, 2 H), 6.92 (d, 1 H, J = 8.13 Hz), 7.51 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.13, 1.76 Hz), 7.55 (dd, 1 H, J = 10.54, 9.01 Hz), 7.72 (d, 1 H, J = 1.76 Hz), 7.90 (dd, 1 H, J = 7.03, 2.20 Hz), 7.98 (m, 1 H) and 10.39 (s, 1 H); MS (EI) m/z 363 (M⁺).

25

EXAMPLE 62

5-[4-Fluoro-3-nitrophenyl]spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one

The title compound was prepared from (2'-oxo-2,3-dihydrospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)boronic acid (2.8 g, 11 mmol) and 5-bromo-2-fluoro-nitrobenzene (2.7 g, 12.2 mmol) as described for example 18, to afford the title

30

- 70 -

compound (2.5 g, 66%) as a solid: mp. 243-245 °C; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.8 - 2.0 (m, 2H), 1.5 - 1.8 (m, 8H), 6.94 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.13 Hz), 7.55 (dd, 1H, *J* = 8.01, 1.87 Hz), 7.63 (dd, *J* = 10.98, 8.79 Hz), 8.07 (m, 1H), 8.30 (dd, 1H, *J* = 7.14, 2.53 Hz) and 10.43 (s, 1H); MS (ESI (neg)) *m/z* 339 (M-H)⁻.

5

EXAMPLE 63**5'-(4-Cyano-3-fluorophenyl)-spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one**

A solution of 4-cyano-3-fluoro-bromobenzene (0.76 g, 3.8 mmol), and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.3 g) in ethylene glycol dimethyl ether (15 cm³) was stirred under N₂ for 20 minutes. To this mixture was then added (spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one-5-yl) boronic acid (1.4 g, 5.7 mmol) and sodium acetate (1.2 g, 11.4 mmol) in water (5 cm³). The solution was brought to reflux for 18 hours and then cooled to room temperature, poured into 2N NaOH and extracted with EtOAc (x 3). The combined extracts were washed with water, brine, dried (MgSO₄), and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc, hexane) to afford the title compound (0.45 g, 37%) as an off-white solid. mp: 258 - 260 °C; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 8.8 (s, 1H), 7.7 - 7.6 (m, 2 H), 7.5 (td, 2H, *J* = 0.9, 1.5, 5.7 Hz), 7.4 (dd, 1H, *J* = 1.5, 8.8 Hz), 7.0 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.1 Hz), 2.0 - 1.6 (m, 10H); MS (-)APCI [M-H]⁻ @ *m/z* 319.

20

EXAMPLE 64**2-fluoro-4-(1',2'-Dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol-5'-yl) benzaldehyde oxime**

A solution of 3-fluoro-4-bromobenzaldehyde oxime (0.5 g, 2.2 mmol), and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.2 g) in ethylene glycol dimethyl ether (10 cm³) was stirred under N₂ for 20 minutes. To this mixture was then added (spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one-5-yl) boronic acid (0.8 g, 3.3 mmol) and sodium acetate (0.7 g, 6.5 mmol) in water (5 cm³). The solution was brought to reflux for 18 hours and then cooled to room temperature, poured into 2N NaOH and

25

- 71 -

extracted with EtOAc (x 3). The combined extracts were washed with water, brine, dried (MgSO₄), and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc, hexane) to afford the title compound (0.25 g, 34%) as an off-white solid. mp: 240 - 242 °C; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 11.6 (s, 1H), 10.4 (s, 1H), 8.2 (s, 1H), 7.8 - 7.7 (m, 2H), 7.6 - 7.5 (m, 3H), 6.9 (d, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 2.0 - 1.6 (m, 10H); MS (EI) M⁺ @ m/z 338.

EXAMPLE 65

5-(2'-oxo-2',3'-dihydrospiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-2-nitrothiophene

10 A solution of 2-bromo-5-nitrothiophene (0.6 g, 2.9 mmol), and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.2 g) in ethylene glycol dimethyl ether (20 cm³) was stirred under N₂ for 20 minutes. To this mixture was then added (spiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one-5-yl) boronic acid (1.0 g, 4.3 mmol) and sodium acetate (1.0 g, 10.0 mmol) in water (5 cm³). The solution was brought to
15 reflux for 18 hours and then cooled to room temperature, poured into 2N NaOH and extracted with EtOAc (x 3). The combined extracts were washed with water, brine, dried (MgSO₄), and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc, hexane) to afford the title compound (0.87 g, 96%) as a yellow solid. mp: 264 - 266 °C; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 10.6 (s, 1H), 8.1 (d, 1H, J = 4.5 Hz), 7.7 (d, 1H, J = 1.8 Hz) 7.6 (m, 2H), 6.9 (d, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 2.0 - 1.9 (m, 8H); MS (EI) M⁺ @
20 m/z 314.

EXAMPLE 66

5-(3-Chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)-3,3-dimethyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one

25 A solution of 5-bromo-3,3-dimethyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one (0.35 g, 1.46 mmol) and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine) palladium (0.13 g, 0.11 mmol) in dimethoxyethane (10 cm³) was stirred under N₂ for 20 min.. To this mixture was then added 3-chloro-4-fluorobenzene boronic acid (0.26 g, 1.49 mmol) and potassium

- 72 -

carbonate (0.62 g, 4.5 mmol) in water (5 cm³). The solution was brought to reflux for 16 h then cooled to RT, poured into saturated ammonium chloride and extracted with EtOAc (x 3). The combined organic extracts were dried (MgSO₄), and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, ethyl acetate: hexane 1:3) to afford the title compound (0.124 g, 0.43 mmol, 30%) as a white solid: m.p. 206.5-207.8 °C, ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.3 (s, 6H), 6.93 (d, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.45 (dd, *J* = 8.9, 8.9 Hz, 1H), 7.5 (dd, *J* = 8.1, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 7.6 (ddd, *J* = 8.9, 7.1, 2.2 Hz, 1H), 7.7 (d, *J* = 1.8 Hz, 1H), 7.8 (dd, *J* = 7.1, 2.2 Hz, 1H), 10.5 (s, 1H); MS (EI) *m/z* 289/291 (M)⁺.

10

EXAMPLE 67

3-(3,3-Dimethyl-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-indol-5-yl)-benzonitrile
(2'-oxo-[2, 3-dihydro-3,3-dimethyl -1, 3'- [3H] indol] -5'-yl) boronic acid

To a solution of 5'-bromo-3,3-dimethyl-[1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'-(1'H)-one (3.5 g, 14.6 mmol) in dry tetrahydrofuran (60 cm³) was added of sodium hydride (60% dispersion in mineral oil, 0.59 g, 14.6 mmol). After 30 min. stirring at room temperature, the mixture was cooled to -78°C and *n*-butyl lithium (2.5 M in hexanes, 5.9 cm³, 14.6 mmol) was added slowly. After 30 min. tri-isopropyl borate (9 cm³, 38.9 mmol) was added and the mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature. After 8 hrs. hydrochloric acid (1N, 200 cm³) and ethylacetate (200 cm³) was added and the mixture stirred for 20 min. The aqueous phase was extracted with ethylacetate, then the combined organic layers were washed with water, brine, dried (Na₂SO₄) and evaporated. The residue was triturated with hexane and the precipitate dried *in vacuo* to obtain (2'-oxo-[2, 3-dihydro-3,3-dimethyl -1, 3'- [3H] indol] -5'-yl) boronic acid (1.8 g, 8.8 mmol, 60%) as a yellow-white solid that was used without further purification. ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.23 (s, 6H), 6.81 (d, *J* = 7.8 Hz, 1H) 7.63 (d, *J* = 7.8 Hz, 1H) 7.66 (s, 1H), 7.84 (s, 2H) 8.69 (s, 1H).

A solution of 3-bromobenzonitrile (0.30 g, 1.65 mmol) and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine) palladium (0.13 g, 0.11mmol) in dimethoxyethane (10

- 73 -

cm³) was stirred under N₂ for 20 min.. To this mixture was then added the (2'-oxo-[2, 3-dihydro-3,3-dimethyl -1, 3'- [3H] indol] -5'-yl) boronic acid, (0.41 g, 2.0 mmol) and potassium carbonate (0.86 g, 6.2 mmol) in water (5 cm³). The solution was brought to reflux for 16 h then cooled to RT, poured into saturated ammonium chloride and extracted with EtOAc (x 3). The combined organic extracts were dried (MgSO₄), and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, ethyl acetate: hexane 1:2.5) to afford the title compound (0.22 g, 0.68 mmol, 51%) as a white solid: m.p. 200.2-202.0 °C, ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.32 (s, 6H), 6.96 (d, J = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.58 (dd, J = 8.1, 1.8, 1H), 7.63 (dd, J = 7.8, 7.8 Hz, 1H), 7.75-7.78 (m, 2H), 7.98 (d, J = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 8.15 (s, 1H), 10.49 (s, 1H); MS (EI) m/z 263 (M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 68

2-fluoro-3-(1',2'-Dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol-5'-yl)

benzaldehyde oxime

A solution of 3-bromo-2-fluorobenzoic acid (0.219 g, 1 mmol) in dry methanol (5 ml) under nitrogen was treated with trimethylorthoformate (0.22 ml, 2 mmol) and p-toluenesulfonic acid (catalytic amount), and then heated under reflux. After 16 h, the mixture was evaporated and the residue partitioned between water and Et₂O. The organic layer was washed with sat. sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, water, brine, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated to give methyl 3-bromo-2-fluorobenzoate (0.195 g, 0.84 mmol, 84%): ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 7.90 - 7.85 (m, 1H), 7.71 - 7.65 (m, 1H), 7.10 (dt, 1H, J = 8.0, 1.0 Hz) and 3.94 (s, 3H); MS (EI) 232 (M⁺).

A solution of the last cited compound (3.077 g, 13.2 mmol) in dry toluene (80 ml) at -78 °C under nitrogen was treated with di-iso-butylaluminum hydride in toluene (1M, 15.7 ml, 15.7 mmol). After 1 h at -78 °C, the mixture was quenched with aqueous HCl (3M, 16 ml). The mixture was warmed to RT, partitioned between EtOAc/H₂O, the aqueous layer was re-extracted with EtOAc, and the combined organic layers were washed with water, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated to afford 3-

- 74 -

bromo-2-fluorobenzaldehyde (2.63 g, 12.9 mmol, 98%), which was used without further purification: ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 10.35 (s, 1H), 7.82 (m, 2H), 7.18 (t, 7.8 Hz).

5 A mixture of the last cited compound (2.63 g, 12.9 mmol), hydroxylamine hydrochloride (1.0g, 14 mmol) and potassium acetate (1.37 g, 14 mmol) was placed in ethanol/ H_2O (60 ml, 8:2) and the mixture was heated under reflux. After 30 min. the mixture was cooled, evaporated and partitioned between EtOAc and water. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried (MgSO_4) and evaporated to give afford 3-bromo-2-fluorobenzaldoxime which was used without further characterization.

10 The title compound was prepared from 3-bromo-2-fluorobenzaldoxime (0.40 g, 1.83 mmol) and (spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one-5-yl) boronic acid as described in example 18, to afford the product (0.094 g, 0.27 mmol, 15% yield) as a white solid: mp. 213 - 217 °C; ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 10.95 (s, 1H), 9.65 (s, 1H), 8.41 (s, 1H), 7.76 (t, 1H, $J = 7.1$ Hz), 7.59 (s, 1H), 7.43 - 7.33 (m, 3H), 7.19 (t, 1H, $J = 7.7$ Hz), 6.98 (d, 1H, $J = 8$ Hz) and 1.91 - 1.60 (m, 10H); MS ((+) ESI) $m/z = 339$
15 $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$.

EXAMPLE 69

5-(3,3-Dimethyl-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-indol-5-yl)-4-methyl thiophene-2-carbonitrile

20 5-Bromo-4-methyl-2-thiophene carboxaldehyde. To a solution of diethylamine (28g, 0.383 mol) in anhydrous THF (400 mL) was added at -40 °C under nitrogen a solution of *n*-BuLi (2.5 M, 153 mL, 0.383 mol) in hexane. After addition, the solution was stirred at -40 °C under nitrogen for 30 minutes, cooled to -78 °C and treated dropwise with a solution of 2-bromo-3-methylthiophene (45g, 0.254 mol) in anhydrous THF (450 mL).
25 The reaction solution was stirred at -78 °C for 30 minutes and treated with anhydrous DMF (100 mL). The mixture was allowed to warm to ambient temperature and was quenched with 1N aqueous hydrochloride solution (1L). The solution was extracted with ethyl acetate(3x450 mL). The extracts were washed with water, brine and dried (MgSO_4). After removal of solvent *in*

- 75 -

vacuo, the subtitled compound was obtained as a white solid (46g, 88.3%). A sample of the product was crystallized from hexane: mp 63-65 °C; IR (KBr) 1654 cm⁻¹. ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ 9.75 (s, 1H), 7.45 (s, 1H), 2.26 (s, 3H); MS (EI) *m/z* 204/206 (M⁺). Anal. Calc. For C₆H₅BrOS: C, 35.14; H, 2.46. Found: C, 35.00; H, 2.44.

- 5 5-Bromo-4-methyl-2-thiophenecarbonitrile. Prepared from 5-bromo-4-methyl-2-thiophene carboxaldehyde using the procedure of Example 35. White solid: mp 40-42 °C; IR (KBr) 2200 cm⁻¹; ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ 7.29 (s, 1H), 2.21 (s, 3H). MS (EI) *m/z* 201/203 (M⁺, 98%/100%); Anal. Calc. For C₆H₄BrNS: C, 35.66; H, 1.99; N, 6.93. Found: C, 36.00; H, 2.14; N, 6.76.
- 10 Prepared according to the procedure for example 18 using (2'-oxo-[2, 3-dihydro-3,3-dimethyl -1, 3'- [3H] indol] -5'-yl) boronic acid (357 mg, 1.7 mmol) and 5-bromo-4-methylthiophene-2-carbonitrile (295 mg, 1.5 mmol) to afford the title compound (227 mg, 0.8 mmol, 55 %) as a white solid: mp. 192.3-193 °C, ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.29 (s, 6H), 2.29 (s, 3H), 6.97 (d, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 7.34 (dd, *J* = 8.0, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 7.49 (d, *J* = 1.7 Hz, 1H), 7.84 (s, 1H), 10.57 (s, 1H); MS (EI) *m/z* 282 (m)⁺.
- 15

EXAMPLE 70

5-(3-Chloro-5-fluoro-phenyl)-3,3-dimethyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one

- 20 Prepared according to the procedure for example 18 for using (2'-oxo-[2, 3-dihydro-3,3-dimethyl -1, 3'- [3H] indol] -5'-yl) boronic acid (345 mg, 1.7 mmol) and 1-bromo-3-chloro-5-fluorobenzene (295 mg, 1.4 mmol) to afford the title compound (245 mg, 0.85 mmol, 60 %) as a white solid: mp. 205.9-206.8 °C. ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.31 (s, 6H), 6.93 (d, *J* = 8.1 Hz), 7.35 (d, *J* = 8.6 Hz, 1H), 7.5-7.6 (m, 2H), 7.6 (s, 1H), 7.78 (d, *J* = 1.4 Hz, 1H), 10.49 (s, 1H); MS (EI) *m/z* 290 (M+H)⁺.
- 25

EXAMPLE 71

5-(3-Fluoro-5-nitro-phenyl)-3,3-dimethyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one

- 76 -

Prepared according to the procedure for example 18 using (2'-oxo-[2, 3-dihydro-3,3-dimethyl -1, 3'- [3H] indol] -5'-yl) boronic acid (272 mg, 1.3 mmol) and 1-fluoro-3-iodo-5-nitrobenzene (299 mg, 1.1 mmol) to afford the title compound (192 mg, 0.64 mmol, 57 %) as a yellow solid: mp. 231.2-232.7 °C, ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.33 (s, 6H), 6.97 (d, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.67 (dd, *J* = 8.1, 1.7 Hz, 1H), 7.88 (d, *J* = 1.6 Hz, 1H), 8.0-8.1 (m, 2H), 8.32 (s, 1H), 10.55 (s, 1H); MS (ESI) *m/z* 301 (M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 72**4-(3,3-Dimethyl-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-indol-5-yl)-furan-2-carbonitrile**

Prepared according to the procedure for example 18 using (2'-oxo-[2, 3-dihydro-3,3-dimethyl -1, 3'- [3H] indol] -5'-yl) boronic acid (354 mg, 1.7 mmol) and 4-bromo-furan-2-carbonitrile (200 mg, 1.2 mmol) to afford the title compound (76 mg, 0.3 mmol, 26 %) as a white solid: mp. 199.6-201.4 °C, ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.28 (s, 6H), 6.89 (d, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 7.48 (dd, *J* = 8.0, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 7.65 (d, *J* = 1.5 Hz, 1H), 8.1 (s, 1H), 8.5 (s, 1H), 10.46 (s, 1H); MS (ESI) *m/z* 251 (M-H)⁻.

EXAMPLE 73**4-Methyl-5-(2'-oxo-2',3'-dihydrospiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol-5'-yl]-2-thiophene carbonitrile**

(Spiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one-5-yl) boronic acid

To a solution of 5-bromo-spiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one (13.1 g, 53 mmol) in anhydrous THF (300 cm³) under N₂, was added sodium hydride (60% in mineral oil, 2.1 g, 53 mmol). After 30 minutes, the reaction mixture was cooled to -78 °C and butyl lithium (2.5 M in hexanes, 22 cm³, 53 mmol) was added slowly. After 30 minutes, tris-*iso*-propylborate (34 cm³, 146 mmol) was added, and the reaction mixture was slowly brought to room temperature, and stirred for 14 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into 1N HCl and extracted with EtOAc (x 3). The organic layers were collected and washed with 1N HCl, water, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated to give the subtitled compound (7.8 g, 64%) as a tan solid which was

- 77 -

used without further purification. ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 10.3 (s, 1H), 7.9 (s, 1H), 7.7 - 7.6 (m, 2H), 6.8 (d, 1H, J = 7.7 Hz), 3.4 (s, 1H), 2.0 - 1.7 (m, 8H); MS (FI-POS) m/z @ 231.

5 A solution of 2-bromo-5-cyano-3-methylthiophene (0.63 g, 3.1 mmol), and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.2 g) in ethylene glycol dimethyl ether (20 cm³) was stirred under N₂ for 20 minutes. To this mixture was added (spiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one-5-yl) boronic acid (1.0 g, 4.7 mmol) and sodium carbonate (1.0 g, 9.4 mmol) in water (5 cm³). The solution was brought to reflux for 18 hours and then cooled to room temperature, poured into 2N NaOH and extracted with EtOAc (x 3). The combined extracts were washed with water, brine, dried (MgSO₄), and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc, hexane) to afford the title compound (0.6 g, 62%) as a pale-yellow solid. mp: 135 - 136 °C; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 10.5 (s, 1H), 7.8 (s, 1H), 7.4 - 7.3 (m, 2H), 7.0 (d, 1H, J = 8.0 Hz), 2.3 (s, 3H), 2.0 - 1.8 (m, 8H); MS [M-H]⁻ = 15 307.

EXAMPLE 74

5'-(4-Cyano-3-fluorophenyl)-spiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one

A solution of 4-cyano-3-fluoro-bromobenzene (0.63 g, 3.1 mmol), and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.2 g) in ethylene glycol dimethyl ether (20 cm³) was stirred under N₂ for 20 minutes. To this mixture was then added (spiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one-5-yl) boronic acid (1.0 g, 4.7 mmol) and sodium carbonate (1.0 g, 9.4 mmol) in water (5 cm³). The solution was brought to reflux for 18 hours and then cooled to room temperature, poured into 2N NaOH and extracted with EtOAc (x 3). The combined extracts were washed with water, brine, dried (MgSO₄), and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc, hexane) to afford the title compound (0.35 g, 36%) as a yellow solid. mp: dec. @ 235 °C; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 10.5 (s, 1H), 7.9 (t, 1H, J = 7.6 Hz), 7.9 (dd, 1H, J = 1.4, 10.2 Hz), 7.3 (td, 2H, J = 1.6, 6.5 Hz), 7.6 (dd, 1H, J = 1.9, 6.3 Hz), 6.9 (d, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 2.0 - 1.9 (m, 8H); MS [M-H]⁻ = 305.

- 78 -

EXAMPLE 75

5'-(3-cyano-4-fluorophenyl)-spiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one

A solution of 3-cyano-4-fluoro-bromobenzene (0.63 g, 3.1 mmol), and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.2 g) in ethylene glycol dimethyl ether (20 cm³) was stirred under N₂ for 20 minutes. To this mixture was then added (spiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one-5-yl) boronic acid (1.0 g, 4.7 mmol) and sodium acetate (1.0 g, 9.4 mmol) in water (5 cm³). The solution was brought to reflux for 18 hours and then cooled to room temperature, poured into 2N NaOH and extracted with EtOAc (x 3). The combined extracts were washed with water, brine, dried (MgSO₄), and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc, hexane) to afford the title compound (0.10 g, 10%) as white crystals. mp: 264 - 266 °C; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 10.4 (s, 1H), 8.3 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4, 3.7 Hz), 8.1 - 8.0 (m, 1H), 7.6 - 7.5 (m, 2H), 7.5 (dd, 1H, J = 1.9, 6.3 Hz), 6.9 (d, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 2.0 - 1.9 (m, 8H); MS [M-H]⁺ = 305.

15

EXAMPLE 76

5'-(3-Chloro-4-fluorophenyl)-spiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one

A solution of 3-chloro-4-fluoro-bromobenzene (0.4 cm³, 0.66 g, 3.1 mmol), and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.2 g) in ethylene glycol dimethyl ether (20 cm³) was stirred under N₂ for 20 minutes. To this mixture was then added (spiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one-5-yl) boronic acid (1.0 g, 4.7 mmol) and sodium carbonate (1.0 g, 9.4 mmol) in water (5 cm³). The solution was brought to reflux for 18 hours and then cooled to room temperature, poured into 2N NaOH and extracted with EtOAc (x 3). The combined extracts were washed with water, brine, dried (MgSO₄), and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc, hexane) to afford the title compound (0.65 g, 66%) as a pale-yellow solid. mp: 202 - 204 °C; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 10.4 (s, 1H), 7.9 (dd, 1H, J = 2.3, 4.9 Hz), 7.7 - 7.6 (m, 1H), 7.6 (d, 1H, J = 1.5 Hz), 7.5 (s, 1H), 7.4 (d, 1H, J = 1.8 Hz), 6.9 (d, 1H, J = 8.0 Hz), 2.0 - 1.9 (m, 8H); MS [M-H]⁺ = 314.

25

- 79 -

EXAMPLE 77

5'-(3-Cyanophenyl)-spiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one

A solution of 3-bromobenzonitrile (0.5 g, 2.6 mmol), and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.2 g) in ethylene glycol dimethyl ether (20 cm³) was stirred under N₂ for 20 minutes. To this mixture was then added (spiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one-5-yl) boronic acid (0.9 g, 3.9 mmol) and sodium carbonate (0.8 g, 7.8 mmol) in water (5 cm³). The solution was brought to reflux for 18 hours and then cooled to room temperature, poured into 2N NaOH and extracted with EtOAc (x 3). The combined extracts were washed with water, brine, dried (MgSO₄), and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc, hexane) to afford the title compound (0.30 g, 40%) as an off-white solid. mp: 217 -219 °C; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 10.4 (s, 1H), 8.2 (s, 1H), 8.0 (d, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.8 (d, 1H, J = 7.7 Hz), 7.6 (m, 2H), 7.5 (dd, 1H, J = 1.8, 6.3 Hz), 6.9 (d, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 2.0 - 1.9 (m, 8H); MS [M-H]⁻ = 287.

15

EXAMPLE 78

5-(1,2-Dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclopentane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)-2-thiophenecarbonitrile

A solution of 2-bromo-5-cyanothiophene (0.5 g, 2.6 mmol), and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.2 g) in ethylene glycol dimethyl ether (20 cm³) was stirred under N₂ for 20 minutes. To this mixture was then added (spiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one-5-yl) boronic acid (0.9 g, 3.9 mmol) and sodium carbonate (0.8 g, 7.8 mmol) in water (5 cm³). The solution was brought to reflux for 18 hours and then cooled to room temperature, poured into 2N NaOH and extracted with EtOAc (x 3). The combined extracts were washed with water, brine, dried (MgSO₄), and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc, hexane) to afford the title compound (0.3 g, 40%) as a yellow solid. mp: 248 °C; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 10.4 (s, 1H), 8.5 (d, 1H, J = 1.4 Hz), 8.3 (d, 1H, J

25

- 80 -

= 1.4 Hz), 7.6 (s, 1H), 7.5 (dd, 1H, J = 1.7, 6.4 Hz), 6.9 (d, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 2.0 - 1.8 (m, 8H); MS [M-H]⁺ = 293.

EXAMPLE 79

5 5-(3,3-Dimethyl-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-indol-5-yl)-furan-2-carbonitrile

A solution of 5-cyano-2-bromofuran (0.5 g, 2.6 mmol), and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.2 g) in ethylene glycol dimethyl ether (20 cm³) was stirred under N₂ for 20 minutes. To this mixture was then added (spiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one-5-yl) boronic acid (0.9 g, 3.9 mmol) and sodium carbonate (0.8 g, 7.8 mmol) in water (5 cm³). The solution was brought to reflux for 18 hours and then cooled to room temperature, poured into 2N NaOH and extracted with EtOAc (x 3). The combined extracts were washed with water, brine, dried (MgSO₄), and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc, hexane) to afford the title compound (0.35 g, 49%) as an off-white solid. mp: 193 - 194 °C; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 10.6 (s, 1H), 7.7 (d, 2H, J = 3.3 Hz), 7.6 (dd, 1H, J = 1.6, 6.6 Hz), 7.1 (d, 1H, J = 3.8 Hz), 6.9 (d, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 2.0 - 1.8 (m, 8H); MS [M-H]⁺ = 277.

EXAMPLE 80

20 5'-(3-Cyano-5-fluorophenyl)-spiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one

A solution of 3-cyano-5-fluoro-bromobenzene (0.5 g, 2.6 mmol), and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.2 g) in ethylene glycol dimethyl ether (20 cm³) was stirred under N₂ for 20 minutes. To this mixture was then added (spiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one-5-yl) boronic acid (0.9 g, 3.9 mmol) and sodium carbonate (0.8 g, 7.8 mmol) in water (5 cm³). The solution was brought to reflux for 18 hours and then cooled to room temperature, poured into 2N NaOH and extracted with EtOAc (x 3). The combined extracts were washed with water, brine, dried (MgSO₄), and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc, hexane) to afford the title compound (0.35 g, 44%) as

- 81 -

white needles. mp: 235 - 237 °C; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 10.5 (s, 1H), 8.1 (s, 1H), 8.0 (dt, 1H, J = 1.7, 2.0, 7.0 Hz), 7.8 - 7.7 (m, 2H), 7.6 (dd, 1H, J = 1.8, 6.4 Hz), 6.9 (d, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 2.0 - 1.9 (m, 8H); MS (EI) M⁺ @ m/z 306.

5

EXAMPLE 81**3-(1',2'-Dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol-5'-yl])phenylacetonitrile**

Prepared from 3-bromophenylacetonitrile and 2'-oxo-2',3,-dihydrospiro [cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)boronic acid according to the procedure for example 18 to afford the title compound as a white powder; mp. 190 - 193°C; ¹H-
10 NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 10.42 (s, 1H), 7.67 (d, 1H, J = 1.39Hz), 7.58 (d, 2H J = 6.87 Hz), 7.46 (m, 2H), 7.31 (d, 1H J = 7.6 Hz), 6.94 (d, 1H, J = 8.05) 4.10 (s, 2H) 2.04 - 1.50 (m, 10H); MS m/z 316(M⁺). Anal. Calc. For C₂₁H₂₀N₂O₂ 0.2 H₂O: C, 78.82, H, 6.42, N, 8.75. Found: C, 78.73, H, 6.44, N, 8.52.

15

EXAMPLE 82**3-(3,3-Dimethyl-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-indol-5-yl)-5-fluorobenzonitrile**

Prepared according to the procedure for example 18 using (2'-oxo-[2, 3-dihydro-3,3-dimethyl -1, 3'- [3H] indol] -5'-yl) boronic acid (640 mg, 3.1 mmol) and 5-bromo-3-cyano-fluorobenzene (423 mg, 21.2 mmol) to afford the title compound
20 (261 mg, 0.93 mmol, 44 %) as a yellow solid: mp. 231.2-232.3 °C , ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.32 (s, 6H), 6.95 (d, J = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 7.64 (dd, J = 8.1, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 7.76 (d, J = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 7.85 (d, J = 1.6 Hz, 1H), 7.93 (d, J = 8.6 Hz, 1H), 8.07 (s, 1H), 10.52 (s, 1H); MS (EI) m/z 280 (M)⁺.

25

EXAMPLE 83**3,3-Dimethyl-5-(5-nitro-thiophene-2-yl)-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one,**

Prepared according to the procedure for example 18 using (2'-oxo-[2, 3-dihydro-3,3-dimethyl -1, 3'- [3H] indol] -5'-yl) boronic acid (384 mg, 1.9 mmol) and

- 82 -

2-bromo-5-nitrothiophene (300 mg, 1.4 mmol) to afford the title compound (270 mg, 0.9 mmol, 65 %) as a yellow brown solid: mp. 223-225 °C, ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.5 (s, 6H), 6.99 (d, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.18 (d, *J* = 4.3 Hz, 1H), 7.44 (d, *J* = 1.7 Hz, 1H), 7.51 (dd, *J* = 8.1, 1.9 Hz, 1H), 7.91 (d, *J* = 4.3 Hz, 1H), 8.07 (br s, 1H); MS (EI) *m/z* 288 (M)⁺.

EXAMPLE 84**2-(3,3-Dimethyl-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-indol-5-yl)-pyrrole-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester**

10 Prepared according to the procedure for example 18 using 5'-bromo-3,3-dimethyl-[1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'-(1'H)-one (1.24 g, 5.2 mmol) and N-BOC-pyrrole-2-boronic acid (1.5 g, 5.93 mmol) to afford the title compound (506 mg, 1.5 mmol, 30 %) as off-white solid: mp. 168.4-170.2 °C, ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.26 (s, 6H), 1.28 (s, 9H), 6.1 (dd, *J* = 3.2, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 6.2 (dd, *J* = 3.2, 3.2 Hz, 1H), 6.8 (d, *J* = 7.9 Hz, 1H), 7.1 (dd, *J* = 7.9, 1.6 Hz, 1H), 7.2 (d, *J* = 1.6 Hz, 1H), 7.3 (dd, *J* = 3.2, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 10.4 (s, 1H); MS (APCI) *m/z* 327 (M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 85**2-(3,3-Dimethyl-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-indol-5-yl)-2-nitro-pyrrole**

20 To a solution of 2-(3,3-Dimethyl-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-indol-5-yl)-pyrrole-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (0.90 g, 2.8 mmol) in acetonitrile (anhydrous, 40 mL) at -15 °C was added silver nitrate (0.49 g, 2.9 mmol) followed by acetyl chloride (0.21 mL, 2.95 mmol). The reaction was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred 16 h. Dichloromethane (250 mL) was added to the reaction mixture; filtered through celite and washed with water, saturated sodium bicarbonate, water then brine dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. Purification via flash column chromatography on silica gel (2:3 ethyl acetate/hexane) gave 2-(3,3-Dimethyl-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-indol-5-yl)-2-nitro-pyrrole-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester as a yellow solid: ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.43 (s, 6H), 1.48 (s, 9H), 6.3 (d, *J* =

- 83 -

4.1 Hz, 1H), 7.0 (d, J = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 7.2 (d, J = 4.1 Hz, 1H), 7.34 (d, J = 1.7 Hz, 1H), 7.4 (dd, J = 8.0, 1.7 Hz, 1H), 8.2 (s, 1H).

2-(3,3-Dimethyl-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-indol-5-yl)-2-nitro-pyrrole-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester, was placed in a 50 mL round bottomed flask under nitrogen. A vigorous flow of nitrogen was maintained as the flask was placed in an oil bath and heated to 160 °C. After 10 min at this temperature, the flask was removed from the oil bath and allowed to cool. The black residue was washed into a larger flask with acetone and adsorbed onto a small amount of florisil. Purification by flash column chromatography on silica gel (1:2 EtOAc:hexane) to afford the title compound (76 mg, 15 %) which was triturated from ether/ hexane to provide a greenish-yellow solid, mp 293.9-294.2 °C (dec). ¹H NMR (DMSO- d_6) δ 1.3 (s, 6H), 6.77 (d, J = 4.3 Hz, 1H), 6.91 (d, J = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.26 (d, J = 4.3 Hz, 1H), 7.78 (dd, J = 8.1, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 7.96 (d, J = 1.8 Hz, 1H), 10.55 (s, 1H), 13.12 (s, 1H); MS (ESI) m/z 270 (M-H)⁺.

15

EXAMPLE 86

5-(3,3-Dimethyl-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-indol-5-yl)-thiophene-2-carbonitrile

Prepared according to the procedure for example 18 using (2'-oxo-[2, 3-dihydro-3,3-dimethyl -1, 3'- [3H] indol] -5'-yl) boronic acid (570 mg, 2.8 mmol) and 5-bromo-thiophene-2-carbonitrile (350 mg, 1.9 mmol) to afford the title compound (299 mg, 1.1 mmol, 60 %) as an off-white solid: mp. 255-256 °C, ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.46 (s, 6H), 6.97 (d, J = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.21 (d, J = 3.9 Hz, 1H), 7.39 (d, J = 1.3 Hz, 1H), 7.47 (dd, J = 8.1, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 7.58 (d, J = 3.9 Hz, 1H), 8.14 (s, 1H); MS (EI) m/z 268 (M)⁺.

20

EXAMPLE 87

3-(3,3-Dimethyl-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-indol-5-yl)-2-fluoro-benzonitrile

Prepared according to the procedure for example 18 using (2'-oxo-[2, 3-dihydro-3,3-dimethyl -1, 3'- [3H] indol] -5'-yl) boronic acid (300 mg, 1.5 mmol) and

- 84 -

4-bromo-2-fluoro-benzonitrile (240 mg, 1.2 mmol) to afford the title compound (185 mg, 0.66 mmol, 55 %) as an off white solid: mp. 270-272 °C, ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.31 (s, 6H), 6.96 (d, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.67 (dd, *J* = 8.1, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 7.74 (dd, *J* = 8.2, 1.5 Hz, 1H), 7.85 (s, 1H), 7.89 (d, *J* = 1.3 Hz, 1H), 7.96 (dd, *J* = 7.5, 7.5, 1H), 10.56 (s, 1H); MS (ESI) *m/z* 279 (M-H).

EXAMPLE 88 - Pharmacology

The biological activity for the compounds of the current invention was evaluated in the in-vitro and in-vivo assays described below. In-vitro potencies lie in the range 0.01 nM - 10,000 nM, and in-vivo potencies in the range 1 µg/kg to 100 mg/kg.

A. In-vitro biology

The in-vitro biology is determined by (1) competitive Radioligand Binding: using the A-form of the human progesterone receptor with progesterone as the radioligand; (2) co-transfection assay, which provides functional activity expressed as agonist EC₅₀ and Antagonist IC₅₀ values; (3) a T47D cell proliferation, which is a further functional assay which also provides agonist and antagonist data; and (4) T47D cell alkaline phosphatase assay, which is a further functional assay which also provides agonist and antagonist data.

1. hPR Binding assay - This assay is carried out in accordance with: Pathirana, C.; Stein, R.B.; Berger, T.S.; Fenical, W.; Ianiro, T.; Mais, D.E.; Torres, A.; Glodman, M.E., *Nonsteroidal human progesterone receptor modulators from the marine alga cymoplia barbata*, J. Steroid Biochem. Mol. Biol., 1992, **41**, 733-738.

2. PRE-luciferase assay in CV-1 cells

The object of this assay is to determine a compound's progestational or antiproggestational potency based on its effect on PRE-luciferase

- 85 -

reporter activity in CV-1 cells co-transfected with human PR and PRE-luciferase plasmids. The materials methods used in the assay are as follows.

- a. Medium: The growth medium was as follows:
DMEM (BioWhittaker) containing 10% (v/v) fetal bovine serum (heat inactivated),
5 0.1 mM MEM non-essential amino acids, 100U/ml penicillin, 100mg/ml
streptomycin, and 2 mM GlutaMax (GIBCO, BRL). The experimental medium was
as follows: DMEM (BioWhittaker), phenol red-free, containing 10% (v/v) charcoal-
stripped fetal bovine serum (heat-inactivated), 0.1 mM MEM non-essential amino
acids, 100U/ml penicillin, 100mg/ml streptomycin, and 2 mM GlutaMax (GIBCO,
10 BRL).

b. Cell culture, transfection, treatment, and luciferase
assay

- Stock CV-1 cells are maintained in growth medium.
Co-transfection is done using 1.2×10^7 cells, 5 mg pLEM plasmid with hPR-B inserted
15 at SphI and BamHI sites, 10 mg pGL3 plasmid with two PREs upstream of the
luciferase sequence, and 50 mg sonicated calf thymus DNA as carrier DNA in 250
ml. Electroporation is carried out at 260 V and 1,000 mF in a Biorad Gene Pulser II.
After electroporation, cells are resuspended in growth medium and plated in 96-well
plate at 40,000 cells/well in 200 μ l. Following overnight incubation, the medium is
20 changed to experimental medium. Cells are then treated with reference or test
compounds in experimental medium. Compounds are tested for antiprogesterational
activity in the presence of 3 nM progesterone. Twenty-four hr. after treatment, the
medium is discarded, cells are washed three times with D-PBS (GIBCO, BRL). Fifty
 μ l of cell lysis buffer (Promega, Madison, WI) is added to each well and the plates are
25 shaken for 15 min in a Titer Plate Shaker (Lab Line Instrument, Inc.). Luciferase
activity is measured using luciferase reagents from Promega.

c. Analysis of Results:

Each treatment consists of at least 4 replicates. Log
transformed data are used for analysis of variance and nonlinear dose response curve

- 86 -

fitting for both agonist and antagonist modes. Huber weighting is used to downweight the effects of outliers. EC_{50} or IC_{50} values are calculated from the retransformed values. JMP software (SAS Institute, Inc.) is used for both one-way analysis of variance and non-linear response analyses.

5 d. Reference Compounds:

Progesterone and trimegestone are reference progestins and RU486 is the reference antiprogesterin. All reference compounds are run in full dose-response curves and the EC_{50} or IC_{50} values are calculated.

10 **Table 1. Estimated EC_{50} , standard error (SE), and 95% confidence intervals (CI) for reference progestins from three individual studies**

	Compound	Exp.	<u>EC_{50}</u>	SE	<u>95% CI</u>	
			(nM)		lower	upper
15	Progesterone	1	0.616	0.026	0.509	0.746
		2	0.402	0.019	0.323	0.501
		3	0.486	0.028	0.371	0.637
20	Trimegestone	1	0.0075	0.0002	0.0066	0.0085
		2	0.0081	0.0003	0.0070	0.0094
		3	0.0067	0.0003	0.0055	0.0082

25 **Table 2. Estimated IC_{50} , standard error (SE), and 95% confident interval (CI) for the antiprogesterin, RU486 from three individual studies**

	Compound	Exp.	<u>IC_{50}</u>	SE	<u>95% CI</u>	
			(nM)		lower	upper
30	RU486	1	0.028	0.002	0.019	0.042
		2	0.037	0.002	0.029	0.048
		3	0.019	0.001	0.013	0.027

Progestational activity: Compounds that increase PRE-luciferase activity significantly ($p < 0.05$) compared to vehicle control are considered active.

Antiprogestational activity: Compounds that decrease 3 nM progesterone induced PRE-luciferase activity significantly ($p < 0.05$)

5 EC_{50} : Concentration of a compound that gives half-maximal increase PRE-luciferase activity (default-nM) with SE.

IC_{50} : Concentration of a compound that gives half-maximal decrease in 3 nM progesterone induced PRE-luciferase activity (default-nM) with SE.

3. T47D cell proliferation assay

10 The objective of this assay is the determination of progestational and antiprogestational potency by using a cell proliferation assay in T47D cells. A compound's effect on DNA synthesis in T47D cells is measured. The materials and methods used in this assay are as follows.

a. Growth medium: DMEM:F12 (1:1)
15 (GIBCO, BRL) supplemented with 10% (v/v) fetal bovine serum (not heat-inactivated), 100U/ml penicillin, 100mg/ml streptomycin, and 2 mM GlutaMax (GIBCO, BRL).

b. Treatment medium: Minimum Essential
Medium (MEM) (#51200-038GIBCO, BRL) phenol red-free supplemented with 0.5%
20 charcoal stripped fetal bovine serum, 100U/ml penicillin, 200 mg/ml streptomycin, and 2 mM GlutaMax (GIBCO, BRL).

c. Cell culture

Stock T47 D cells are maintained in growth medium. For BrdU incorporation
assay, cells are plated in 96-well plates (Falcon, Becton Dickinson Labware) at
25 10,000 cells/well in growth medium. After overnight incubation, the medium is changed to treatment medium and cells are cultured for an additional 24 hr before treatment. Stock compounds are dissolved in appropriate vehicle (100% ethanol or 50% ethanol/50% DMSO), subsequently diluted in treatment medium and added to the cells. Progestin and antiprogestin reference compounds are run in full dose-

- 88 -

response curves. The final concentration of vehicle is 0.1%. In control wells, cells receive vehicle only. Antiprogestins are tested in the presence of 0.03 nM trimegestone, the reference progestin agonist. Twenty-four hours after treatment, the medium is discarded and cells are labeled with 10 mM BrdU (Amersham Life

5 Science, Arlington Heights, IL) in treatment medium for 4 hr.

d. Cell Proliferation Assay

At the end of BrdU labeling, the medium is removed and BrdU incorporation is measured using a cell proliferation ELISA kit (#RPN 250, Amersham Life Science) according to manufacturer's instructions. Briefly, cells are fixed in an
10 ethanol containing fixative for 30 min, followed by incubation in a blocking buffer for 30 min to reduce background. Peroxidase-labeled anti-BrdU antibody is added to the wells and incubated for 60 min. The cells are rinsed three times with PBS and incubated with 3,3',5,5'-tetramethylbenzidine (TMB) substrate for 10-20 min depending upon the potency of tested compounds. Then 25 μ l of 1 M sulfuric acid is
15 added to each well to stop color reaction and optical density is read in a plate reader at 450 nm within 5 min.

e. Analysis of Results:

Square root-transformed data are used for analysis of variance and nonlinear dose response curve fitting for both agonist and antagonist modes. Huber weighting
20 is used to downweight the effects of outliers. EC_{50} or IC_{50} values are calculated from the retransformed values. JMP software (SAS Institute, Inc.) is used for both one-way analysis of variance and non-linear dose response analyses in both single dose and dose response studies.

f. Reference Compounds:

25 Trimegestone and medroxyprogesterone acetate (MPA) are reference progestins and RU486 is the reference antiprogestin. All reference compounds are run in full dose-response curves and the EC_{50} or IC_{50} values are calculated.

- 89 -

Table 3. Estimated EC₅₀, standard error (SE), and 95% confidence intervals (CI) for individual studies

5	Compound	Exp	EC ₅₀ (nM)	SE	95% CI	
					lower	upper
	Trimegestone	1	0.017	0.003	0.007	0.040
		2	0.014	0.001	0.011	0.017
		3	0.019	0.001	0.016	0.024
10	MPA	1	0.019	0.001	0.013	0.027
		2	0.017	0.001	0.011	0.024

Table 4. Estimated IC₅₀, standard error, and 95% confident interval for the antiprogesterin, RU486

15	Compound	Exp	IC ₅₀ (nM)	SE	95% CI	
					lower	upper
20	RU486	1	0.011	0.001	0.008	0.014
		2	0.016	0.001	0.014	0.020
		3	0.018	0.001	0.014	0.022

EC₅₀: Concentration of a compound that gives half-maximal increase in BrdU incorporation with SE; IC₅₀: Concentration of a compound that gives half-maximal decrease in 0.1 trimegestone induced BrdU incorporation with SE

25 **4. T47D cell alkaline phosphatase assay**

The purpose of this assay is to identify progestins or antiprogesterins by determining a compound's effect on alkaline phosphatase activity in T47D cells. The materials and methods used in this assay are as follows.

- 30 a. Culture medium: DMEM:F12 (1:1) (GIBCO, BRL)
supplemented with 5% (v/v) charcoal stripped fetal bovine serum (not heat-inactivated),
100U/ml penicillin, 100 µg/ml streptomycin, and 2 mM GlutaMax (GIBCO, BRL).

- 90 -

b. Alkaline phosphatase assay buffer:

I. 0.1 M Tris-HCl, pH 9.8, containing 0.2% Triton X-100

II. 0.1 M Tris-HCl, pH 9.8 containing 4 mM p-nitrophenyl phosphate (Sigma).

5

c. Cell Culture and Treatment:

Frozen T47D cells were thawed in a 37°C water bath and diluted to 280,000 cells/ml in culture medium. To each well in a 96-well plate (Falcon, Becton Dickinson Labware), 180 µl of diluted cell suspension was added. Twenty µl of reference or test compounds diluted in the culture medium was then added to each well. When testing for progestin antagonist activity, reference antiprogestins or test compounds were added in the presence of 1 nM progesterone. The cells were incubated at 37°C in a 5% CO₂/humidified atmosphere for 24 hr.

10

d. Alkaline Phosphatase Enzyme Assay:

At the end of treatment, the medium was removed from the plate and fifty µl of assay buffer I was added to each well. The plates were shaken in a titer plate shaker for 15 min. Then 150 µl of assay buffer II was added to each well. Optical density measurements were taken at 5 min intervals for 30 min at a test wavelength of 405 nM.

15

e. Analysis of Results: Analysis of dose-response data

For reference and test compounds, a dose response curve is generated for dose (X-axis) vs. the rate of enzyme reaction (slope) (Y-axis). Square root-transformed data are used for analysis of variance and nonlinear dose response curve fitting for both agonist and antagonist modes. Huber weighting is used to downweight the effects of outliers. EC₅₀ or IC₅₀ values are calculated from the retransformed values. JMP software (SAS Institute, Inc.) is used for both one-way analysis of variance and non-linear dose response analyses in both single dose and dose response studies.

20

25

- 91 -

f. Reference Compounds:

Progesterone and trimegestone are reference progestins and RU486 is the reference antiprogestin. All reference compounds are run in full dose response curves and the EC₅₀ or IC₅₀ values are calculated.

5

Table 5. Estimated EC₅₀, standard error (SE), and 95% confidence intervals (CI) for reference progestins from three independent experiments

10	Compound	Exp.	EC ₅₀ (nM)	SE	95% CI	
					lower	upper
	Progesterone	1	0.839	0.030	0.706	0.996
		2	0.639	0.006	0.611	0.669
		3	1.286	0.029	1.158	1.429
15	Trimegestone	1	0.084	0.002	0.076	0.091
		2	0.076	0.001	0.072	0.080
		3	0.160	0.004	0.141	0.181

Table 6. Estimated IC₅₀, standard error, and 95% confident interval for the reference antiprogestin RU486 from three independent experiments

25	Compound	Exp	IC 50 (nM)	SE	95% CI	
					lower	upper
	RU486	1	0.103	0.002	0.092	0.115
		2	0.120	0.001	0.115	0.126
		3	0.094	0.007	0.066	0.134

30 B. In-vivo Biology

The primary in-vivo assay is the rat decidualization model which may be used to determine progestational effects of both agonists and antagonists. The secondary in-vivo assay

- 92 -

is the rat ovulation inhibition model which is under development and hence the protocol is unavailable.

1. Rat decidualization assay The objective of this procedure is used to evaluate the effect of progestins and antiprogestins on rat uterine decidualization and compare the relative potencies of various test compounds. The materials and methods used in this assay are as follows.

- a. Methods: Test compounds are dissolved in 100% ethanol and mixed with corn oil (vehicle). Stock solutions of the test compounds in oil (MazolaTM) are then prepared by heating (~80 °C) the mixture to evaporate ethanol. Test compounds are subsequently diluted with 100% corn oil or 10% ethanol in corn oil prior to the treatment of animals. No difference in decidual response was found when these two vehicles were compared.

b. Animals (RACUC protocol #5002)

- Ovariectomized mature female Sprague-Dawley rats (~60-day old and 230g) are obtained from Taconic (Taconic Farms, NY) following surgery. Ovariectomy is performed at least 10 days prior to treatment to reduce circulating sex steroids. Animals are housed under 12 hr light/dark cycle and given standard rat chow and water ad libitum.

c. Treatment

- Rats are weighed and randomly assigned to groups of 4 or 5 before treatment. Test compounds in 0.2 ml vehicle are administered by subcutaneous injection in the nape of the neck or by gavage using 0.5 ml. The animals are treated once daily for seven days. For testing antiprogestins, animals are given the test compounds and a EC₅₀ dose of progesterone (5.6 mg/kg) during the first three days of treatment. Following decidual stimulation, animals continue to receive progesterone until necropsy four days later.

d. Dosing

Doses are prepared based upon mg/kg mean group body weight. In all studies, a control group receiving vehicle is included. Determination of

- 93 -

dose-response curves is carried out using doses with half log increases (e.g. 0.1, 0.3, 1.0, 3.0 mg/kg...).

e. Decidual induction

Approximately 24 hr after the third injection, decidualization
 5 is induced in one of the uterine horns by scratching the antimesometrial luminal
 epithelium with a blunt 21 G needle. The contralateral horn is not scratched and
 serves as an unstimulated control. Approximately 24 hr following the final treatment,
 rats are sacrificed by CO₂ asphyxiation and body weight measured. Uteri are
 removed and trimmed of fat. Decidualized (D-horn) and control (C-horn) uterine
 10 horns are weighed separately.

f. Analysis of Results:

The increase in weight of the decidualized uterine horn is
 calculated by D-horn/C-horn and logarithmic transformation is used to maximize
 normality and homogeneity of variance. The Huber M-estimator is used to down
 15 weight the outlying transformed observations for both dose-response curve fitting and
 one-way analysis of variance. JMP software (SAS Institute, Inc.) is used for both one-
 way ANOVA and non-linear dose-response analyses.

g. Reference Compounds:

All progestin reference compounds were run in full dose-
 20 response curves and the EC₅₀ for uterine wet weight were calculated.

Table 7. Estimated EC₅₀, standard error (SE), and 95% confidence intervals for individual studies

Compound	Exp	EC ₅₀		95% CI	
		(mg/kg, s.c.)	SE	lower	upper
Progesterone	1	5.50	0.77	4.21	7.20
	2	6.21	1.12	4.41	8.76
3-Ketodesogestrel	1	0.11	0.02	0.07	0.16

- 94 -

		2	0.10	0.05	0.11	0.25
		3	0.06	0.03	0.03	0.14
	Levonorgestrel	1	0.08	0.03	0.04	0.16
5		2	0.12	0.02	0.09	0.17
		3	0.09	0.02	0.06	0.13
		4	0.09	0.02	0.06	0.14
	MPA	1	0.42	0.03	0.29	0.60
10		2	0.39	0.05	0.22	0.67
		3	0.39	0.04	0.25	0.61

Table 8. Estimated average EC_{50} , standard error, and 95% confidence intervals for dose-response curves of 3 reference compounds

Compound	<u>EC_{50}</u>		<u>95% CI</u>	
	(mg/kg, s.c.)	SE	lower	upper
Progesterone	5.62	0.62	4.55	7.00
20 3-Ketodesogestrel	0.10	0.02	0.07	0.14
Levonorgestrel	0.10	0.01	0.08	0.12

Table 9. Estimated IC_{50} , standard error, and 95% confident interval for the antiprogesterin, RU 486

Compound	Exp.	<u>IC_{50}</u>		<u>95% CI</u>	
		(mg/kg, p.o.)	SE	lower	upper
RU 486	1	0.21	0.07	0.05	0.96
30	2	0.14	0.02	0.08	0.27

- 95 -

Concentration: Compound concentration in assay(default-mg/kg body weight)

Route of administration: Route the compound is administered to the animals

5 Body weight: Mean total animal body weight (default-kg)

D-horn: Wet weight of decidualized uterine horn (default-mg)

C-horn: Wet weight of control uterine horn (default-mg)

Decidual response: $[(D-C)/C] \times 100\%$

10 Progestational activity: Compounds that induce decidualization significantly ($p < 0.05$) compared to vehicle control are considered active

Antiprogesterone activity: Compounds that decrease EC_{50} progesterone induced decidualization significantly ($p < 0.05$)

EC_{50} for uterine weight: Concentration of compound that gives half-maximal increase in decidual response (default-mg/kg)

15 IC_{50} for uterine weight: Concentration of compound that gives half-maximal decrease in EC_{50} progesterone induced decidual response (default-mg/kg)

Data for Representative Compounds

20

Example #	Ki/nM	CV-1 IC_{50} /nM	Decid. IC_{50} mg/kg
34	19	14	50% @ 10
35	22	19	50% @ 10
80			70% # 3
77			60% @ 3
44	123	20	50% @ 3
73			50% @ 3
36	4.8	9	50% @ 10
32	9	1	60% @ 10
47	18	7	50% @ 10

- 96 -

EXAMPLE 89

4-(1,2-Dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)-2-fluorobenzeneacetonitrile

Prepared from 4-bromo-2-fluorophenylacetonitrile and (2'-oxo-2',3'-
5 dihydrospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl) boronic acid according to the
procedure for example 18 to afford the title compound as a white solid; mp. 180-183
°C; ¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 10.4 (s, 1H), 7.7 (s, 1H), 7.6-7.7 (m, 4H) 6.9 (d, 1H, J = 8.1
Hz), 4.1 (s, 2H), 1.9 (m, 2H), 1.7 - 1.6 (m, 8H). MS (APCI (-)) m/z 333 [M-H]⁺ Anal.
calc. for C₂₁H₁₉FN₂O. 0.5 H₂O: C, 73.49, H, 5.87, N, 8.20. Found: C, 73.55, H, 5.50,
10 N, 7.36.

EXAMPLE 90

5-(3-Fluoro-4-methoxyphenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one

Prepared from 4-bromo-2-fluoroanisole and (2'-oxo-2',3'-
15 dihydrospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl) boronic acid according to the
procedure for example 18 to afford the title compound as a white solid, mp. 178 - 180
°C; ¹H-NMR (DMSO - d₆) δ 10.4 (s, 1H), 7.65 (d, 1H, J = 1.1 Hz), 7.5 - 7.4 (m, 3H),
7.2 (t, 1H, J = 8.9 Hz), 6.9 (d, 1H, J = 8 Hz), 3.9 (s, 3H), 1.9 (m, 2H) 1.7 - 1.6 (m, 8H);
MS (APCI (-)) m/z 324 [M-H]⁺; Anal. Calc. For C₂₀H₂₀FO₂: C, 73.83, H, 6.20, N,
20 4.30. Found: C, 73.55, H, 6.23, N, 4.40.

EXAMPLE 91

5-(3-Chlorophenyl)spiro[cyclobutane-1,3-[3H]indole]-2(1H)-one

5-Bromospiro[cyclobutane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one. To a stirred solution of
25 spiro[cyclobutane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one (*J. Med. Chem.* 1987, 824-9) (1.0 g, 6
mmol) in glacial acetic acid (10 mL) was added dropwise at room temperature a
solution of bromine (0.30 mL, 6 mmol) in glacial acetic acid (6 mL). After stirring for
10 min, anhydrous sodium acetate (0.47 g, 6 mmol) was added and the solution was
concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in ethyl ether (50 mL) and washed

- 97 -

sequentially with water (50 mL), aqueous saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (50 mL), water (50 mL) and brine (30 mL). The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. Crystallization from ethyl ether yielded the product as a white fluffy solid (1.1 g, 73%), mp 235-7 °C; ¹H NMR (DMSO-*d*₆, 300 MHz) δ 2.15-2.41 (m, 6 H), 6.74 (d, 1 H, *J* = 8.2 Hz), 7.33 (dd, 1 H, *J* = 2, 8.2 Hz), 7.75 (d, 1 H, *J* = 2 Hz), 10.36 (bs, 1 H); MS (EI) *m/z* 251 [*M*⁺]; Anal. Calcd for C₁₁H₁₀BrNO: C, 52.41; H, 4.00; N, 5.56. Found: C, 51.98; H, 4.24; N, 5.42.

To a solution of 5-bromospiro[cyclobutane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one (0.6 g, 2 mmol) in ethylene glycol dimethyl ether (50 mL) under a nitrogen atmosphere was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (140 mg, 0.1 mmol). To the solution was added sequentially 3-chlorophenyl boronic acid (0.48 g, 3 mmol) and potassium carbonate (0.76 g, 5 mmol) in water (5 mL). The mixture was heated to 80 °C for 3 h and allowed to cool. The reaction mixture was poured into water (100 mL) and extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 100 mL). The organic layers were combined, washed with brine (50 mL) and dried over magnesium sulfate. The solution was filtered, concentrated *in vacuo*, and the residue was purified by HPLC (Zorbax PRO, C18, 10u, 15A, 50 X 250mm; 35% Water/65% AcCN; 254NM; AMB. temp.) to give the title compound (200 mg, 35%) as a white powder, mp 199.5-201 °C. ¹H NMR (DMSO-*d*₆, 300 MHz) δ 2.21-2.28 (m, 2 H), 2.40-2.45 (m, 4 H), 6.87 (d, 1 H, *J* = 8.1 Hz), 7.37 ('d', 1 H), 7.44-7.52 (m, 2 H), 7.65 (bd, 1 H, *J* = 7.8 Hz), 7.76 (bs, 1 H), 7.92 (bs, 1 H), 10.35 (s, 1 H). MS (EI) *m/z* 283 [*M*⁺]. Anal. Calcd for C₁₇H₁₄ClNO: C, 71.96; H, 4.97; N, 4.94. Found: C, 70.75; H, 5.07; N, 4.68.

EXAMPLE 92

25 5-(3-Chlorophenyl)spiro[cyclopropane-1,3-[3H]indole]-2(1H)-one

To 5-(3-chloro-phenyl)-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one (1.2 g, 5 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (25 mL, anhydrous) at -20 °C was added slowly *n*-butyllithium (2.5 M solution in hexanes, 3.93 mL, 9.8 mmol), followed by *N,N,N',N'*-tetramethylethylenediamine (1.48 mL, 9.8 mmol). After 15 min, 1,2-dibromoethane

- 98 -

(1.27 mL, 15 mmol) was added slowly and the mixture was allowed to reach room temperature. After 5 days, saturated aqueous ammonium chloride solution (50 mL) and ethyl acetate (50 mL) were added. The layers were separated and the aqueous phase was extracted with ethyl acetate (2 x 25 mL). The organic layers were
5 combined, washed with 1 N HCl (25 mL) and brine (25 mL), and dried over magnesium sulfate. The solution was filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography (40% ethyl acetate/hexane) on a pad of silica gel to give the product (40 mg) as white crystals, mp 212-214 °C; ¹H NMR (CDCl₃, 300 MHz) δ 1.59-1.63 (m, 2 H), 1.80-1.84 (m, 2 H), 7.00-7.03 (m, 2 H), 7.28-
10 7.42 (m, 4 H), 7.51 ('t', 1 H), 7.85 (bs, 1 H). MS (EI) *m/z* 269 [M⁺]. Anal. Calcd for C₁₆H₁₂ClNO: C, 71.25; H, 4.48; N, 5.19. Found: C, 70.78; H, 4.88; N, 5.10.

EXAMPLE 93

2-Nitro-5-(1,2-dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclobutane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)-1H-pyrrole-1-carboxylic acid, *tert*-butyl ester

15
20
25
1-t-Butoxycarbonylpyrrole-2-boronic acid. To 1-*tert*-butyl pyrrolecarboxylate (Aldrich, 25 g, 0.15 mol, 1.0 eq) in THF at -78 °C (anhydrous, 250 mL) was added LDA (2 M solution in heptane/THF/ethylbenzene, 82 mL, 1.1 eq). After stirring for 30 min at -78 °C, trimethylborate (85 mL, 0.750 mol, 5.0 eq) was added. After stirring at -78 °C for 1 h, the dry ice bath was removed and the reaction was allowed to come to room temperature overnight. HCl (0.25 N, 200 mL) was added to the reaction and the THF was removed *in vacuo*. The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl ether (3 x 300 mL). The combined ether layers were washed with water (2 x 200 mL), then with brine (200 mL), and dried over magnesium sulfate. The solution was filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. When the product began to crystallize on the rotary, the flask was removed and allowed to stand. The crystals were filtered and washed with ice-cold ethyl ether to give the product (14 g, 44%) as a white solid. Several crystallizations of filtrate from cold ether gave more product (4.5 g, 14 %).

- 99 -

5-(1,2-dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclobutane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)-1H-pyrrole-1-carboxylic acid, tert-butyl ester. To a solution of 5-Bromospiro[cyclobutane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one (WAY-163202) (0.6 g, 2.4 mmol) in ethylene glycol dimethyl ether (50 mL) under a nitrogen atmosphere was added
5 tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (140 mg, 0.1 mmol). To the solution was added sequentially 1-t-butoxycarbonylpyrrole-2-boronic acid (0.65 g, 3.1 mmol) and potassium carbonate (0.75 g, 5.4 mmol) in water (5 mL). The mixture was heated to 80 °C for 3 h and allowed to cool. The reaction mixture was poured into water (100 mL) and extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 100 mL). The organic layers were
10 combined, washed with brine (50 mL) and dried over magnesium sulfate. The solution was filtered, concentrated *in vacuo*, and the residue was purified by flash column chromatography to give the product (0.7 g, 86%) as a tan powder, mp 163-165 °C. ¹H NMR (DMSO-*d*₆, 400 MHz) δ 1.3 (s, 9 H), 2.16 – 2.49m, 6 H), 6.19 (dd, 1 H, *J* = 1.8, 3.2 Hz), 6.24 (t, 1 H, *J* = 3.3 Hz), 6.76 (d, 1 H, *J* = 8.1 Hz), 7.09 (dd, 1 H, *J* =
15 1.8, 8.0 Hz), 7.30 (dd, 1 H, *J* = 1.8, 3.3), 7.48 (d, 1 H, *J* = 1.8 Hz), 10.24 (s, 1 H). MS (APCI) *m/z* 339 [M+H]⁺. Anal. Calcd for C₂₀H₂₂N₂O₃: C, 70.99; H, 6.55; N, 8.28. Found: C, 69.51; H, 6.38; N, 7.69.

To a solution of 5-(1,2-dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclobutane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)-1H-pyrrole-1-carboxylic acid, tert-butyl ester (0.97 g, 2.9 mmol) in acetonitrile (50
20 mL) and dichloromethane (5 mL) at -20 °C was added silver nitrate (0.51 g, 3.0 mmol). After 20 min, acetyl chloride (0.20 mL, 2.9 mmol) in acetonitrile (3 mL) was added and the solution was allowed to come to room temperature. After 24 h, the reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (100 mL) and filtered through celite. The filtrate was poured into water (100 mL) and the layers were separated.
25 The organic layer was washed with brine (50 mL) and dried over magnesium sulfate. The solution was filtered, concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (40% ethyl acetate/hexane) to give the title compound (415 mg, 37%) as a yellow powder, mp 265 °C (dec.). ¹H NMR (DMSO-*d*₆; 400 MHz) δ 1.45 (s, 9 H), 2.17 – 2.48 (m, 6 H), 6.60 (d, 1 H, *J* = 4.2 Hz), 6.90 (d,

- 100 -

1 H, $J = 8.1$ Hz), 7.35 (dd, 1 H, $J = 2.0, 8.1$ Hz), 7.46 (d, 1 H, $J = 4.2$ Hz), 7.70 ('d', 1 H, $J = 1.8$ Hz), 10.50 (s, 1 H). MS (ESI) m/z 382 $[M - H]^+$. Anal. Calcd for $C_{20}H_{21}N_3O_5$: C, 62.65; H, 5.52; N, 10.96. Found: C, 62.58; H, 5.60; N, 10.91.

5

EXAMPLE 94

Nitro-5-(1,2-dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclopentane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)-1H-pyrrole-1-carboxylic acid, tert-butyl ester

To a solution of 5-(1,2-dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclopentane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)-1H-pyrrole-1-carboxylic acid, tert-butyl ester (1.5 g, 4.0 mmol) in acetonitrile (50 mL) and dichloromethane (5 mL) at -20 °C was added silver nitrate (0.76 g, 4.5 mmol). After 20 min, acetyl chloride (0.30 mL, 4.0 mmol) in acetonitrile (3 mL) was added and the solution was allowed to come to room temperature. After 24 h, the reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (100 mL) and filtered through celite. The filtrate was poured into water (100 mL) and the layers were separated. The organic layer was washed with brine (50 mL) and dried over magnesium sulfate. The solution was filtered, concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (40% ethyl acetate/hexane) to give the title compound (650 mg, 41%) as a yellow powder, mp $150 - 153$ °C. 1H NMR ($DMSO-d_6$; 400 MHz) δ 1.42 (s, 9 H), 1.77-2.00 (m, 8 H), 6.55 (d, 1 H, $J = 4.2$ Hz), 6.93 (d, 1 H, $J = 8.0$ Hz), 7.33 (dd, 1 H, $J = 1.7, 8.0$ Hz), 7.37 ('d', 1 H, $J = 1.7$ Hz), 7.43 (d, 1 H, $J = 4.2$ Hz), 10.53 (s, 1 H). MS ((-) APCI) m/z 396 $[M - H]^+$. Anal. Calcd for $C_{21}H_{23}N_3O_5$: C, 63.47; H, 5.83; N, 10.57. Found: C, 62.95; H, 5.52; N, 10.32.

25

EXAMPLE 95

5-(5-Nitro-1H-pyrrol-2-yl)spiro[cyclobutane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one

2-Nitro-5-(1,2-dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclobutane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)-1H-pyrrole-1-carboxylic acid, tert-butyl ester (350 mg, 0.91 mmol) was placed in a 25 mL round bottomed flask stoppered with a rubber septum and equipped with nitrogen inlet and a needle to allow gaseous outflow. A vigorous flow of nitrogen was maintained as

- 101 -

the flask was placed in an oil bath and heated to 150 °C. After 20 min at this temperature, the flask was removed from the oil bath and allowed to cool. The residue was dissolved in acetone and was purified by flash column chromatography (40% ethyl acetate/hexane) on a pad of silica gel. Further purification by HPLC gave the title compound (100 mg, 39%) as a bright yellow powder, mp 250 °C (dec.); ¹H NMR (DMSO-*d*₆, 400 MHz) δ 2.18 – 2.48 (m, 6 H), 6.77 (dd, 1 H, *J* = 2.4, 4.4 Hz), 6.83 (d, 1 H, *J* = 8.1 Hz), 7.25 (dd, 1 H, *J* = 2.4, 4.3 Hz), 7.73 (dd, 1 H, *J* = 2.0, 8.1 Hz), 8.23 ('d', 1 H, *J* = 1.8 Hz), 10.41 (bs, 1 H), 13.13 (s, 1 H); MS (ESI) *m/z* 282 [M-H]. Anal. Calcd. For C₁₅H₁₃N₃O₃: C, 63.60; H, 4.63; N, 14.83. Found: C, 62.59; H, 4.58; N, 14.28.

EXAMPLE 96

5-(5-Nitro-1H-pyrrol-2-yl)spiro[cyclopentane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one

2-Nitro-5-(1,2-dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclopentane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)-1H-pyrrole-1-carboxylic acid, tert-butyl ester (580 mg, 1.5 mmol) was placed in a 25 mL round bottomed flask stoppered with a rubber septum and equipped with nitrogen inlet and a needle to allow gaseous outflow. A vigorous flow of nitrogen was maintained as the flask was placed in an oil bath and heated to 150 °C. After 20 min at this temperature, the flask was removed from the oil bath and allowed to cool. The residue was dissolved in acetone and was purified by flash column chromatography (40% ethyl acetate/hexane) on a pad of silica gel. Further purification by HPLC gave the title compound (300 mg, 67%) as a yellow powder, mp 275 °C (dec.). ¹H NMR (DMSO-*d*₆, 400 MHz) δ 1.78-2.07 (m, 8 H), 6.77 (dd, 1 H, *J* = 2.4, 4.2 Hz), 6.86 (d, 1 H, *J* = 8.2 Hz), 7.24 (dd, 1 H, *J* = 2.4, 4.2 Hz), 7.71 (dd, 1 H, *J* = 1.8, 8.2 Hz), 7.87 ('d', 1 H, *J* = 1.8 Hz), 10.47 (bs, 1 H), 13.12 (s, 1 H). MS (ESI) *m/z* 296 [M-H]. Anal. Calcd. For C₁₆H₁₅N₃O₃: C, 64.64; H, 5.09; N, 14.13. Found: C, 63.82; H, 5.20; N, 13.73.

EXAMPLE 97

5-(1,2-dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclopentane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)-1H-pyrrole-1-carboxylic acid, tert-butyl ester

A solution of 5'-Bromospiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1H)-one (2.0 g, 7.5 mmol) and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (430 mg, 0.3 mmol) in ethylene glycol dimethyl ether (50 mL) was stirred under a flow of nitrogen for 15 min. To the solution was added sequentially 1-t-butoxycarbonylpyrrole-2-boronic acid (2.1 g, 9.7 mmol) and potassium carbonate (2.4 g, 17 mmol) in water (10 mL). The mixture was heated to 80 °C for 3 h and allowed to cool. The reaction mixture was poured into water (50 mL) and extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 50 mL). The organic layers were combined, washed with brine (30 mL) and dried over magnesium sulfate. The solution was filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. Crystallization from 20% ethyl acetate/hexane gave the product (2.2 g, 83%) as a white powder, mp 179-180.5 °C. ¹H NMR (DMSO-*d*₆, 400 MHz) δ 1.30 (s, 9H), 1.75-1.98 (m, 8 H), 6.16 (dd, 1 H, *J* = 1.8, 3.3 Hz), 6.22 ('t', 1 H, *J* = 3.3, 3.3 Hz), 6.79 (d, 1 H, *J* = 7.9 Hz), 7.08 (dd, 1 H, *J* = 1.8, 7.9 Hz), 7.14 ('d', 1 H, *J* = 1.5 Hz), 7.28 (dd, *J* = 1.9, 3.3 Hz), 10.30 (s, 1 H); MS (EI) *m/z* 352 [M⁺]; Anal. Calcd for C₂₁H₂₄N₂O₃: C, 71.57; H, 6.86; N, 7.95. Found: C, 71.08; H, 6.83; N, 7.74.

To a solution of 5-(1,2-dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclopentane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)-1H-pyrrole-1-carboxylic acid, tert-butyl ester (WAY-163755) (2.2 g, 6.0 mmol) in THF (anhydrous, 25 mL) was added at -78 °C chlorosulfonyl isocyanate (0.63 mL, 7.0 mmol). After 90 min, dimethylformamide (11 mL, 140 mmol) was added and the reaction was allowed to warm to room temperature. The reaction mixture was poured into water (50 mL) and extracted with ethyl acetate (2 x 50 mL). The organic layers were combined, washed with brine (50 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. Purification via flash column chromatography on silica gel (30% ethyl acetate/hexane) gave the title compound (1.7 g, 75%) as white crystals, mp 167-9 °C; ¹H NMR (DMSO-*d*₆, 400 MHz) δ 1.34 (s, 9H), 1.75-1.98 (m, 8 H), 6.39 (d, 1 H, *J* = 3.7 Hz), 6.84 (d, 1 H, *J* = 7.9 Hz), 7.17 (dd, 1 H, *J* = 1.8, 7.9 Hz), 7.28 ('t', 2

- 103 -

H), 10.41 (s, 1 H); MS (ESI) m/z 376 [M-H]⁻. Anal. Calcd. for C₂₂H₂₃N₃O₃: C, 70.01; H, 6.14; N, 11.13. Found: C, 69.67; H, 6.38; N, 11.04.

EXAMPLE 98

5 **5-(1,2-Dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)-4-propyl-2-thiophenecarbonitrile**

The title compound was prepared in a manner similar to example 69 from 5-bromo-4-n-propyl thiophene-2-carbonitrile (1.17 g, 5 mmol), (1,2-dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H] indol]-5-boronic acid (1.24 g, 5 mmol),
10 tetrakis(triphenylphosphine) palladium, potassium carbonate (2.75 g, 21 mmol), water (10 mL), and dimethoxyethane (50 mL) heated at reflux over night, to afford the title compound (0.7 g, 40%): m.p.168-171 °C; ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 10.56 (s, 1H), 7.93 (s, 1H) 7.52-7.51 (d, 1H, *J* = 1.5 Hz), 7.33 - 7.29 (dd, 1H, *J* = 1.6 Hz), 7.00-6.96 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.0 Hz), 2.62-2.57 (t, 2H), 1.86 (m, 2H), 1.70-1.56 (m, 11 H), 0.88-0.84 (t, H);
15 MS m/z (APCI (+)) 351 [M+H]⁺. IR (KBr) 1620, 1700, 2200 cm⁻¹; Anal. Calc. For C₂₁H₂₂N₂OS·1/2 H₂O: C, 70.2; H, 6.39; N, 7.79. Found. C, 70.67; H, 6.34; N, 7.62.

EXAMPLE 99

20 **5-(1,2-Dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)4-n-butyl-2-thiophenecarbonitrile.**

The title compound was prepared in a manner similar to example 69 from 5-bromo-4-n-butyl thiophenecarbonitrile¹ (1.24 g, 5.1 mmol), (1,2-dihydro -2-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H] indol]-5-boronic acid (1.24 g, 5.05 mmol),
tetrakis(triphenylphosphine) palladium (0.25 g), potassium carbonate (2.75 g, 21
25 mmol), water (10 mL), and dimethoxyethane (50 mL) heated at reflux for 5 hours to afford the title compound (1 g, 54%), m.p.130-132° C. ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 10.56 (s, 1H), 7.92 (s, 1H) , 7.52-7.51 (d, 1H, *J* = 1.2 Hz), 7.32-7.29 (dd, 1H, *J* = 1.5 Hz), 6.98 - 6.96 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.0 Hz), 2.64 - 2.59 (t, 2H), 1.99 - 1.86 (m, 2H), 1.70 - 1.50 (m, 11 H), 1.32 - 1.22 (m, 2H) , 0.86 - 0.82 (t, 3H); MS (APCI (+)) m/z 365 [M+H]⁺; IR

- 104 -

(KBr) 1620,1700;2200 cm^{-1} ; Anal. Calc. For $\text{C}_{22}\text{H}_{24}\text{N}_2\text{OS} \cdot 1/4 \text{H}_2\text{O}$. C, 71.61; H, 6.69; N, 7.59. Found: C, 71.13; H, 6.61; N, 6.91.

EXAMPLE 100**5 5-(3-Chlorophenyl)-4-methylspiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one**

To a -25 °C solution of 4-methyl-2-oxindole (3.0 g, 20.2 mmol) (Tett, 1966, 22,10, 3337-43) in of anhydrous THF (100 mL) under N_2 is added *N,N,N',N'*-tetramethylethylenediamine (8.0 mL, 51.0 mmol) followed by dropwise addition of *n*-butyl lithium (10.0 M in hexanes, 5.1 mL, 51.0 mmol). After 30 min. a solution of 1,5-diisopentane (9.2 mL, 61.0 mmol) in 3 (mL) of THF was added and the reaction mixture was allowed to warm to RT and stir for 14 h. The reaction mixture was poured into water, extracted with EtOAc (x 2), the combined organic layers were washed with dil. HCl (pH 1), water (x 2), dried (MgSO_4) and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO_2 , ethyl acetate: hexane 1:4) to afford the product (3.2 g, 15 mmol, 74%) as a tan solid: ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 1.2-1.45 (m, 1H), 1.55-1.75 (m, 4H), 1.85-1.95 (d, $J = 13$ Hz, 1H), 2.05-2.35 (m, 4H), 2.47 (s, 3H), 6.72 (dd, $J = 8.1$, 1.0 Hz, 1H), 6.95 (dd, $J = 8.1$, 8.0 Hz, 1H), 7.32 (dd, $J = 8.0$, 1.0 Hz, 1H), 8.6 (br s, 1H).

5-Bromo-4-methylspiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one. A solution of the above oxindole (0.44 g, 2.0 mmol) in CHCl_3 (10 mL) with sodium acetate (0.28 g, 3.4 mmol) is cooled to 0 °C and treated with bromine (0.11 mL, 2.0 mmol) in CHCl_3 (4 mL). After 30 min. the mixture is warmed to RT and stirred an additional hour. The reaction mixture is poured into sat. sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and extracted with EtOAc (x 2), the combined organic layers were washed with water, sat. sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, water, dried (MgSO_4), and evaporated to give an off-white solid which was purified by column chromatography (SiO_2 , ethyl acetate: hexane 2:4) to afford (0.2 g, 0.7 mmol, 35 %) of the product: ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 1.2-1.45 (m, 1H), 1.55-1.75 (m, 4H), 1.85-1.95 (d, $J = 13$ Hz, 1H), 2.05-2.35 (m, 4H), 2.47 (s, 3H), 6.62 (d, $J = 8.0$ Hz, 1H), 7.4 (d, $J = 8.0$ Hz, 1H), 8.47 (br s, 1H).

- 105 -

5-(3-chlorophenyl)-4-methylspiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one. A solution of the above 5-bromo-4-methyl-oxindole (0.1 g, 0.34 mmol) and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine) palladium (0.05 g, 0.04 mmol) in dimethoxyethane (10 mL) was stirred under N₂ for 20 min.. To this mixture was then added 3-chlorophenylboronic acid (0.065 g, 0.41 mmol) and sodium carbonate (0.1 g, 1.0 mmol) in water (3 mL). The solution was brought to reflux for 6 h then cooled to RT, poured into water and extracted with EtOAc (x 3). The combined organic extracts were washed with water, brine, dried (MgSO₄), and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, ethyl acetate: hexane 1:3) to afford the

5
10
15
subtitled compound (0.077 g, 0.2 mmol, 70%) as a yellow solid: m.p. 164-165 °C; ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.25-1.4 (m, 1H), 1.6-1.7 (m, 3H), 1.78 (d, *J* = 12.0 Hz, 2H), 1.9 (d, *J* = 13.0 Hz, 1H), 2.1-2.35 (m, 3H), 2.49 (s, 3H), 6.75 (d, *J* = 7.9 Hz, 1H), 7.1 (d, *J* = 7.9 Hz, 1H), 7.15-7.18 (m, 1H), 7.26-7.35 (m, 3H), 7.88 (br s, 1H); ¹³C-NMR (CDCl₃) 16.71 (q), 20.7, 25.5, 29.9 (t), 48.5 (s), 107.1, 127.0, 128.0, 129.4, 129.5, 130 (d), 132.2, 133.0, 134.0, 136.6, 140.1, 144, 182.6 (s); MS (EI) *m/z* 326, (M+H)⁺ w/1 Cl.

EXAMPLE 101

5-(1,2-Dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)-1H-3-nitropyrrole-2-carbonitrile

20

To a solution of *tert*-butyl 2-cyano-5-(4,4-dimethyl-2-oxo-1,4-dihydro-2H-3,1-benzoxazin-6-yl)-1H-pyrrole-1-carboxylate (0.11 g, 2.6 mmol) in TFA (5 mL) at 0 °C was added silver nitrate (1.1 eq, 49 mg, 2.86 mmol). After 5 min the reaction was poured onto ice, DCM (5 mL) was added and the layers were separated. The aqueous

25
layer was extracted with DCM (3 x 5 mL) and the combined organic layer was washed with brine, dried over MgSO₄ and concentrated in vacuo. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel eluting with 40% ethyl acetate/hexane to 5-(1,2-dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)-1H-3-nitropyrrole-2-carbonitrile (20 mg, 21%) as a white solid. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, *d*₆-DMSO) δ 1.4 –

- 106 -

1.9 (10H, m), 6.94 (d, 1H, $J=8.1\text{Hz}$), 7.47 (dd, 1H, $J=8.1, 1.75\text{Hz}$), 7.73 (s, 1H), 7.75 (d, 1H, $J=1.75\text{Hz}$), 10.6 (s, 1H), 13.4 (s, 1H). M/z (ES) 335 (M-H)⁺. Anal. calcd for C₁₈H₁₆N₄O₃, C, 64.3, H, 4.79, N, 16.7. Found, C, 62.2, H, 5.20, N, 15.1.

5

EXAMPLE 102

5-(2-Nitro-1H-pyrrol-3-yl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one.

According to a procedure described in *J. Med. Chem.* **1983**, 26, p.800, succinic anhydride (2.0 g, 20 mmol) and spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one (4.03 g, 20 mmol) gave 4-oxo-4-(1,2-dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)butanoic acid (100%). ¹H NMR (d_6 -DMSO, 300 MHz) δ 1.5 – 2.0 (m, 10H), 2.56 (t, 10 1H, $J=6\text{Hz}$), 3.20 (t, 1H, $J=6\text{Hz}$), 6.95 (d, 1H, $J=8.1\text{Hz}$), 7.91 (d, 1H, $J=8.1\text{Hz}$), 8.0 (s, 1H), 10.7 (s, 1H), 12.1 (s, 1H). MS (EI) m/z 300 (M-H)⁺.

According to a procedure described in *J. Org. Chem.* **1984**, p.3840 4-oxo-4-(1,2-dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)butanoic acid (5.64 g, 18 15 mmol) and thallium nitrate gave dimethyl-2-(1,2-dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)succinate (7.95 g, 18 mmol) as a white powder (71%). ¹H NMR (d_6 -DMSO, 300 MHz) δ 1.44-1.84 (m, 1H), 2.68 (dd, 1H, $J=4.97, 16.9\text{Hz}$), 3.06 (dd, 1H, $J=16.9, 10.5\text{Hz}$), 3.5 (s, 6H), 4.03 (dd, 1H, $J=4.9, 10.5\text{Hz}$), 6.78 (d, 1H, $J=7.9\text{Hz}$), 7.07 (d, 1H, $J=7.9\text{Hz}$), 7.39 (s, 1H), 10.31 (s, 1H). MS (EI) m/z 346 (M+H)⁺.

20 To a solution of dimethyl-2-(1,2-dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)succinate (2.0g, 6.0 mmol) in THF (30 mL) was added LiBH₄ (2.5 eq, 0.33 g, 15 mmol). The solution was refluxed for 1.5h, cooled and quenched by the careful addition of 1N HCl. The aqueous layer was extracted with DCM (3 x 10 mL) and the combined organic layer was washed with brine, dried over MgSO₄ and 25 purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel eluting with 5% MeOH/ethyl acetate to give of 2-(1,2-dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)butan-1,4-diol (78 g, 47%) as a white solid. ¹H NMR (300 MHz, d_6 -DMSO) δ 1.53 - 1.60 (m, 1H), 1.72 (m, 2H), 1.93 (m, 7H), 2.69 (m, 1H), 3.26 (m, 2H), 3.46 (t, 2H, $J=5.8\text{Hz}$), 4.35 (t, 1H, $J=5.2\text{Hz}$), 4.55 (t, 1H, $J=5.2\text{Hz}$), 6.70 (d, 1H, $J=7.8\text{Hz}$), 6.94

- 107 -

(d, 1H, $J=7.8\text{Hz}$), 7.03 (s, 1H), 10.2 (s, 1H). M/z (ES) 276 ($M+H$)⁺. Anal. calcd for $C_{16}H_{21}NO_3$, C, 96.79, H, 7.69, N, 5.09. Found, C, 70.02, H, 7.64, N, 5.02.

Oxalyl chloride (4 eq, 1.0 mL, 11 mmol) in DCM (40 mL) at -78°C was treated with DMSO (8 eq, 1.62 mL, 22 mmol). After 2 min a solution of 2-(1,2-dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)butan-1,4-diol (1 eq, 0.78 g, 2.9 mmol) in DMSO:DCM (1:3, 5 mL) was added followed 15 min later by addition of triethylamine (18 eq, 7.2 mL, 52 mmol). The solution was removed from the cooling bath and allowed to reach room temperature. The solution was filtered through celite, concentrated in vacuo and redissolved in MeOH (10 mL). A large excess of ammonium acetate was added and the solution was heated to 60°C for 1h then stored in a refrigerator for 16h. The solution was partitioned between DCM and water. The layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with DCM (3 x 10 mL) and the combined organic layer was washed with brine, dried over MgSO_4 and purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel eluting with 60% ethyl acetate/hexane to give 5-(1H-pyrrol-3-yl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one (0.12 g, 19%) as a white solid. ^1H NMR (300 MHz, d_6 -DMSO) δ 1.79 - 1.83 (m, 2H), 1.95 (m, 6H), 6.37 (s, 1H), 6.73 (m, 2H), 7.13 (s, 1H), 7.29 (d, 1H, $J=8\text{Hz}$), 10.17 (s, 1H), 10.83 (s, 1H). M/z (ES) 253 ($M+H$)⁺.

To a solution of give 5-(1H-pyrrol-3-yl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one (45 mg, 0.17 mmol) in DCM:MeCN (1:1, 5 mL) at -40°C sequentially was added silver nitrate (1.1 eq, 32 mg, 0.19 mmol) and a solution of acetyl chloride (1.1 eq, .01 mL, 0.19 mmol) in MeCN (0.5 mL). After 1h the cooling bath was removed and the reaction was allowed to stir for 16h. DCM (20 mL) was added and the suspension was filtered through celite, washed sequentially with sat. aq. NaHCO_3 and brine, dried over MgSO_4 and concentrated in vacuo. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel eluting with 40% ethyl acetate/hexane to give 5-(2-nitro-1H-pyrrol-3-yl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one (20 mg, 40%) as a yellow powder. ^1H NMR (300 MHz, d_6 -DMSO) δ 1.63 - 1.95 (m, 10H), 6.44 (t, 1H,

- 108 -

$J=2.69\text{Hz}$), 6.97 (d, 1H, $J=8.1\text{Hz}$), 7.22 (t, 1H, $J=2.9\text{Hz}$), 7.44 (dd, 1H, $J=8.1, 1.7\text{Hz}$), 7.79 (d, 1H, $J=1.4\text{Hz}$), 9.39 (s, 1H), 11.85 (s, 1H). M/z 310 ($M-H$).

EXAMPLE 103**5 5-(4-Chlorophenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one**

The title compound was prepared from CAT-817819 (1.9 g, 7.8 mmol) and 4-bromochlorobenzene (1.0 g, 5.2 mmol) according to the method for Example 18 to afford the product (0.68 g, 42%) as an off white solid: mp. 226 – 229 °C; ^1H NMR (DMSO- d_6) δ 10.41 (br s, 1H), 7.68 – 7.63 (m, 3H), 7.49 – 7.46 (m, 3H), 6.93 (d, 1H, $J = 8.0\text{ Hz}$), 1.99 – 1.82 (m, 2H), 1.76 – 1.51 (m, 8H); MS (EI) m/z 311/313 [M] $^+$; $\text{C}_{19}\text{H}_{18}\text{ClON}$ requires C, 73.19; H, 5.82; N, 4.49; Found C, 73.13; H, 5.68; N, 4.40.

EXAMPLE 104**15 5-(2-Chlorophenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one**

The title compound was prepared from CAT-817819 (1.9 g, 7.8 mmol) and 2-bromochlorobenzene (1.0 g, 5.2 mmol) according to the method for Example 18 to afford the title compound (0.68 g, 42%) as an off white solid: mp. 174 – 175 °C; ^1H NMR (DMSO- d_6) δ 10.43 (br s, 1H), 7.56 – 7.52 (m, 2H), 7.43 – 7.33 (m, 3H), 7.25 (dd, 1H, $J = 8.0$ and 1.7 Hz), 6.93 (d, 1H, $J = 8.0\text{ Hz}$), 1.92 – 1.79 (m, 2H) and 1.77 – 1.43 (M, 8H); MS (EI) m/z 311/313 [M] $^+$; Anal. Calc. For $\text{C}_{19}\text{H}_{18}\text{ClON}$: C, 73.19; H, 5.82; N, 4.49; Found C, 73.10; H, 5.86; N, 4.30.

25 EXAMPLE 105**5-(1,2-Dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclopentane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)-2-furancarbonitrile**

The title compound was prepared from CAT-830083 (0.9 g, 3.9 mmol) and 5-cyano-furancarbonitrile (0.5 g, 2.6 mmol) according to the method for Example 18 to afford the title compound (0.35, 49%) as an off white solid: mp. 193 – 194 °C; ^1H NMR (DMSO- d_6) δ 10.55 (br s, 1H), 7.69 – 7.63 (m, 3H), 7.15 (d, 1H, $J = 3.8\text{ Hz}$),

- 109 -

6.92 (d, 1H, $J = 8.1$ Hz), 2.00 – 1.83 (m, 8H); MS (ESI (-)) m/z 277 [M-H]⁻. Anal.
Calc. For C₁₇H₁₄N₂O₂: C, 73.73; H, 5.07; N, 10.07; Found C, 73.01; H, 4.98; N, 9.69.

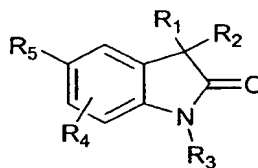
5 All publications cited in this specification are incorporated herein by reference herein. While the invention has been described with reference to a particularly preferred embodiment, it will be appreciated that modifications can be made without departing from the spirit of the invention. Such modifications are intended to fall within the scope of the appended claims.

- 110 -

What is Claimed:

1. A method of contraception which comprises administering to a female of child bearing age for 28 consecutive days:

- a) a first phase of from 14 to 24 daily dosage units of a progestational agent equal in progestational activity to about 35 to about 100 μg levonorgestrel;
- b) a second phase of from 1 to 11 daily dosage units, at a daily dosage of from about 2 to 50 mg, of an antiprogesterin compound of Formula 1:

**1**

wherein:

R_1 and R_2 are chosen independently from H, alkyl, substituted alkyl; OH; O(alkyl); O(substituted alkyl); OAc; aryl; optionally substituted aryl; heteroaryl; optionally substituted heteroaryl; alkylaryl; alkylheteroaryl; 1-propynyl; or 3-propynyl;

or R_1 and R_2 are joined to form a ring comprising one of the following:

$-\text{CH}_2(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}_2-$; $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CMe}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$; $-\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{CH}_2-$; $\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{O}$;
 $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2-$; or $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{N}(\text{H or alkyl})\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$;

or R_1 and R_2 comprise a double bond to CMe_2 , C(cycloalkyl), O, or C(cyloether);

n is an integer from 0 to 5;

m is an integer from 1 to 4;

- 111 -

p is an integer from 1 to 4;

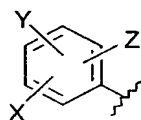
R₃ is selected from H, OH, NH₂, C₁ to C₆ alkyl, substituted C₁ to C₆ alkyl, C₃ to C₆ alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, or COR^A;

R^A is selected from H, C₁ to C₃ alkyl, substituted C₁ to C₃ alkyl, C₁ to C₃ alkoxy, substituted C₁ to C₃ alkoxy, C₁ to C₃ aminoalkyl, or substituted C₁ to C₃ aminoalkyl;

R₄ is selected from H, halogen, CN, NH₂, C₁ to C₆ alkyl, substituted C₁ to C₆ alkyl, C₁ to C₆ alkoxy, substituted C₁ to C₆ alkoxy, C₁ to C₆ aminoalkyl, or substituted C₁ to C₆ aminoalkyl;

R^S is selected from the groups a), b) or c):

a) R^S is a trisubstituted benzene ring containing the substituents X, Y and Z as shown below:



wherein:

X is selected from the group of halogen, OH, CN, C₁ to C₃ alkyl, substituted C₁ to C₃ alkyl, C₁ to C₃ alkoxy, substituted C₁ to C₃ alkoxy, C₁ to C₃ thioalkyl, substituted C₁ to C₃ thioalkyl, S(O)alkyl, S(O)₂alkyl, C₁ to C₃ aminoalkyl, substituted C₁ to C₃ aminoalkyl, NO₂, C₁ to C₃ perfluoroalkyl, 5 or 6 membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 3 heteroatoms, COR^B, OCOR^B, or NR^CCOR^B;

R^B is H, C₁ to C₃ alkyl, substituted C₁ to C₃ alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl,

- 112 -

C₁ to C₃ alkoxy, substituted C₁ to C₃ alkoxy, C₁ to C₃ aminoalkyl, or substituted C₁ to C₃ aminoalkyl;

R^C is H, C₁ to C₃ alkyl, or substituted C₁ to C₃ alkyl;

Y and Z are independently selected from H, halogen, CN, NO₂, C₁ to C₃ alkoxy, C₁ to C₃ alkyl, or C₁ to C₃ thioalkyl;

or

b) R^S is a five or six membered heterocyclic ring with 1, 2, or 3 heteroatoms selected from O, S, SO, SO₂ or NR⁶ and containing one or two independent substituents from the group of H, halogen, CN, NO₂ and C₁ to C₃ alkyl, C₁ to C₃ alkoxy, C₁ to C₃ aminoalkyl, COR^D, or NR^ECOR^D;

R^D is H, C₁ to C₃ alkyl, substituted C₁ to C₃ alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, C₁ to C₃ alkoxy, substituted C₁ to C₃ alkoxy, C₁ to C₃ aminoalkyl, or substituted C₁ to C₃ aminoalkyl;

R^E is H, C₁ to C₃ alkyl, or substituted C₁ to C₃ alkyl;

R⁶ is H, or C₁ to C₃ alkyl; or

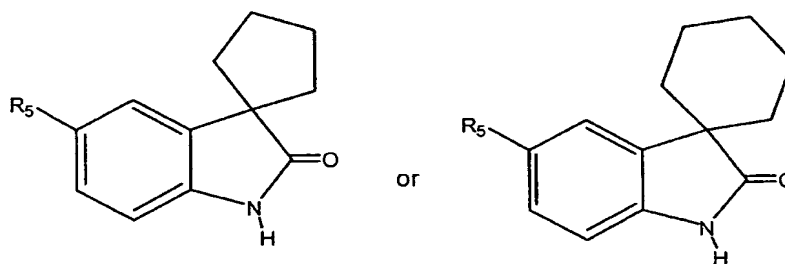
c) R^S is an indol-4-yl, indol-7-yl or benzo-2-thiophene moiety, the moiety being optionally substituted by from 1 to 3 substituents selected from halogen, lower alkyl, CN, NO₂, lower alkoxy, or CF₃; or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof; and

c) optionally, a third phase of daily dosage units of an orally and pharmaceutically acceptable placebo for the remaining days of the 28 consecutive

- 113 -

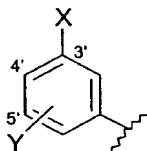
days in which no antiprogestin, progestin or estrogen is administered; wherein the total daily dosage units of the first, second and third phases equals 28.

2. A method of Claim 1 wherein the progestational agent is levonorgestrel and the anti-progestin compound has the structure:



wherein:

R⁵ is a disubstituted benzene ring containing the substituents X and Y as shown below:



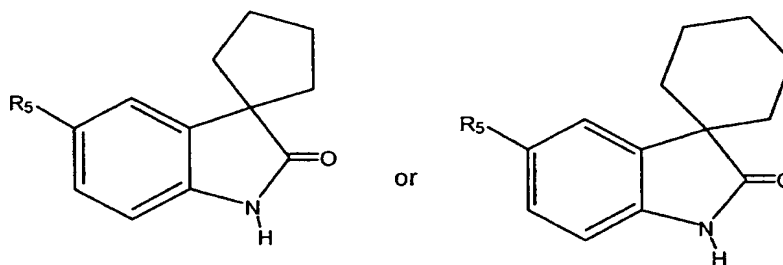
X is taken from the group of halogen, CN, C₁ to C₃ alkoxy, C₁ to C₃ alkyl, NO₂, C₁ to C₃ perfluoroalkyl, 5 membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 3 heteroatoms or C₁ to C₃ thioalkoxy; and

Y is a substituent on the 4' or 5' position of the disubstituted benzene ring selected from the group of H, halogen, CN, NO₂, C₁ to C₃ alkoxy, C₁ to C₄ alkyl, or C₁ to C₃ thioalkyl;

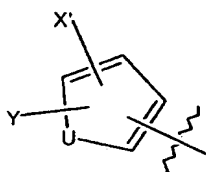
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

- 114 -

3. A method of Claim 1 wherein the progestational agent is levonorgestrel and the anti-progestin compound has the structure:



wherein R^5 is a five membered ring with the structure:



U is O, S, or NR^6 ,

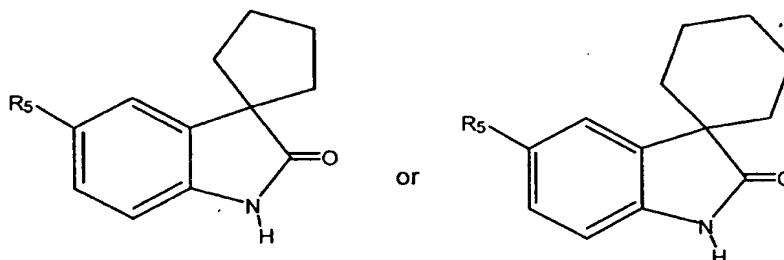
R^6 is H, or C_1 to C_3 alkyl, C_1 to C_4 CO_2 alkyl,

X' is selected from the group of halogen, CN, NO_2 , C_1 to C_3 alkyl or C_1 to C_3 alkoxy; with the proviso that when X' is CN, U is not NR^6 ;

Y' is selected from H, F, CN, NO_2 or C_1 to C_4 alkyl;
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

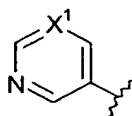
4. A method of Claim 1 wherein the progestational agent is levonorgestrel and the anti-progestin is a compound having the structure:

- 115 -



wherein:

R^5 is a six membered ring with the structure shown



wherein :

X^1 is N or CX^2 ,

X^2 is halogen, CN or NO_2 ;

or pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof

5. A method of Claim 1 wherein the anti-progestin is selected from the group of:

- i) 5-(3-Nitro-phenyl)-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one;
- ii) 3-methyl-5-(3-nitrophenyl)-1,3-dihydroindol-2-one;
- iii) 5-(3-Methoxy-phenyl)-3,3-dimethyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one;
- iv) 5-(3-Chloro-phenyl)-3,3-dimethyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one;
- v) 3,3-Dimethyl-5-(3-nitro-phenyl)-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one;

- 116 -

- vi) 5-(3-Chloro-phenyl)-3-ethyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one;
- vii) 5-(3-Chloro-phenyl)-3,3-diethyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one; 3,3-Diethyl-indol-2-one;
- vii) 5-(3-Chloro-phenyl)-3-methoxy-3-methyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one;
- viii) 5-(3-Chloro-phenyl)-3-methoxy-3-prop-1-ynyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one; or
- ix) 5-(3-Chloro-phenyl)-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

6. A method of Claim 1 wherein the anti-progestin is selected from the group of:

- i) 3-(1',2'-Dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol-5'-yl) benzaldehyde;
- ii) 3-(1',2'-Dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol-5'-yl) benzaldehyde oxime;
- iii) 3-(1',2'-Dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol-5'-yl)benzaldehyde methyloxime ether;
- iv) 3-(1',2'-Dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol-5'-yl)pyridine carbonitrile;

- 117 -

- v) 3-(1,2-Dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)aniline;
- vi) 4-(1,2-Dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)-2-thiophenecarbonitrile;
- vii) 5-(1',2'-Dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-thiophene-3-carbonitrile;
- viii) 2-(1',2'-Dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-thiophene-2-carbonitrile; or
- ix) 5-(1',2'-Dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-3-furancarbonitrile;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

7. A method of Claim 1 wherein the anti-progestin is selected from the group of:

- i) 3-(1',2'-Dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)benzonitrile;
- ii) 3-(1,2-Dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)-5-fluorobenzonitrile;
- iii) 3-(1,2-Dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)-4-fluorobenzonitrile;

- 118 -

- iv) 3-(1'-Diethoxymethyl-1', 2'-dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-5-fluorobenzonitrile;
- v) 3-(7'-Bromo-1', 2'-dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-5-fluoro-benzonitrile;
- vi) 3-(7'-Nitro-1', 2'-dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-5-fluoro-benzonitrile;
- vii) 3-(7'-Amino-1', 2'-dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-5-fluoro-benzonitrile;
- viii) 4-(1,2-Dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)-2-furancarbonitrile;
- ix) 2-fluoro-4-(1',2'-Dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl) benzaldehyde oxime; or
- x) 3-(1',2'-Dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)phenylacetonitrile;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

8. A method of Claim 1 wherein the anti-progestin is selected from the group of:

- i) 5-(3-chlorophenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one;

- 119 -

- ii) 5'-(3-Chloro-4-fluorophenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one;
- iii) 5'-(3-Fluorophenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one;
- iv) 5'-(3,5-Difluorophenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one;
- v) 5-(3,4-Difluorophenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one;
- vi) 5-[3-(Methylthio)phenyl]spiro [cyclohexane-1,3 -[3H] indol]-2(1H)-one;
- vii) 5'-[3-(Methylsulfinyl)phenyl]spiro[cyclohexane-1,3' -[3H] indol]-2'(1'H)-one;
- viii) 5-[3-(Methylsulfonyl)phenyl]spiro[cyclohexane-1,3 -[3H] indol]-2(1H)-one;
- ix) 5'-(3-Chloro-5-fluorophenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one;
- x) 5'-(5-Nitro-1H-pyrrol-2-yl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one; or
- xi) 5-(3-Fluoro-4-nitrophenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one;

- 120 -

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

9. A method of Claim 1 wherein the anti-progestin is selected from the group of:

- i) 5-(3-Bromo-5-fluorophenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one;
- ii) 5'-(3-Fluoro-5-methylphenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one;
- iii) 5'-(3-Nitrophenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one;
- iv) 5-(3-Fluoro-5-nitrophenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one;
- v) 5'-(3-Hydroxyphenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one;
- vi) 5-[4-Fluoro-3-nitrophenyl]spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one;
- vii) 5-(3-cyano-4-fluorophenyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one;
- viii) 5'-(4-Cyano-3-fluorophenyl)-spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one;
- ix) 2,3,5,6-Tetrahydro-5-(3-nitrophenyl)spiro[3H-indole-3,4-[4H]pyran]-2(1H)-one;

- 121 -

- x) 5'-(Pyrimidin-5-yl)-spiro[cyclohexane]-1,3'-[3H]indol-2'(1H)-one;
- xi) 5'-(1H-Indol-4-yl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one;
- xii) 5-(5-Chloro-2-thienyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H] indol]-2(1H)-one;
- xiii) 5-(5-Acetyl-2-thienyl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H] indol]-2(1H)-one;

or

- xiv) 5'-(5-Nitro-1-methyl-pyrrol-2-yl)spiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

10. A method of Claim 1 wherein the anti-progestin is selected from the group of:

- i) 5-(2'-oxo-2',3'-dihydrospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-2-thiophenecarbonitrile;
- ii) 4-Methyl-5-(2'-oxo-2',3'-dihydrospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-2-thiophene carbonitrile;
- iii) 4-Ethyl-5-(2'-oxo-2',3'-dihydrospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-2-thiophenecarbonitrile;
- iv) 5-(2'-oxo-2',3'-dihydrospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-2-nitro-thiophene;

- 122 -

v) 5'-(3-Chlorophenyl)spiro[4,4-dimethylcyclohexane-1',3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one;

vi) 5'-(3-Nitrophenyl)spiro[4,4-dimethylcyclohexane-1',3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one;

vii) 2-fluoro-3-(1',2'-Dihydro-2'-oxospiro[cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H]indol-5'-yl) benzaldehyde oxime;

viii) 5'-(5-Chloro-3-methylbenzo[b]thien-2-yl)spiro [cyclohexane-1,3'-[3H] indol]-2'(1'H)-one; or

ix) 5-[4-Fluoro-3-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]spiro[cyclohexane-1,3-[3H]indol]-2(1H)-one;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

11. A method of Claim 1 wherein the anti-progestin is selected from the group of:

i) 5'-(4-Cyano-3-fluorophenyl)-spiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one;

ii) 5'-(3-cyano-4-fluorophenyl)-spiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one;

iii) 5'-(3-Chloro-4-fluorophenyl)-spiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one;

iv) 5'-(3-Cyanophenyl)-spiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one ;

- 123 -

- v) 4-(1,2-Dihydro-2-oxospiro[cyclopentane-1,3-[3H]indol]-5-yl)-2-thiophenecarbonitrile;
- vi) 5'-(3-Cyano-5-fluorophenyl)-spiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one;
- vii) 4-Methyl-5-(2'-oxo-2',3'-dihydrospiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-2-thiophene carbonitrile;
- viii) 5-(2'-oxo-2',3'-dihydrospiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-5'-yl)-2-nitrothiophene; or
- ix) 5'-(3-nitrophenyl)spiro[cyclopentane-1,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

12. A method of Claim 1 wherein the anti-progestin is selected from the group of:

- i) 5-(3-Chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)-3,3-dimethyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one;
- ii) 3-(3,3-Dimethyl-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-indol-5-yl)-benzonitrile;
- iii) 5-(3,3-Dimethyl-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-indol-5-yl)-4-methyl thiophene-2-carbonitrile;
- iv) 5-(3-Chloro-5-fluoro-phenyl)-3,3-dimethyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one;
- v) 5-(3-Fluoro-5-nitro-phenyl)-3,3-dimethyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one;

- 124 -

- vi) 4-(3,3-Dimethyl-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-indol-5-yl)-furan-2-carbonitrile;
 - vii) 5-(3,3-Dimethyl-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-indol-5-yl)-furan-2-carbonitrile;
 - viii) 3-(3,3-Dimethyl-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-indol-5-yl)-5-fluorobenzonitrile;
 - ix) 2-(3,3-Dimethyl-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-indol-5-yl)-2-nitro-pyrrole;
 - x) 5-(3,3-Dimethyl-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-indol-5-yl)-thiophene-2-carbonitrile;
 - xi) 3-(3,3-Dimethyl-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-indol-5-yl)-2-fluorobenzonitrile;
 - xii) 2-(3,3-Dimethyl-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-indol-5-yl)-pyrrole-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester; or
 - xiii) 3,3-Dimethyl-5-(5-nitro-thiophene-2-yl)-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-one;
 - xiv) 5'-(3-Chlorophenyl)spiro[1,3-dioxolane-2,3'-[3H] indol]-2'(1'H)-one;
- or
- xv) 5'-(3-Chlorophenyl)spiro[1,3-dioxane-2,3'-[3H]indol]-2'(1'H)-one;
- or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

- 125 -

13. The method of Claim 1 wherein the progestational agent is selected from the group of levonorgestrel, norgestrel, desogestrel, 3-ketodesogestrel, norethindrone, gestodene, norethindrone acetate, norgestimate, osaterone, cyproterone acetate, trimegestone, dienogest, drospirenone, nomegestrol, or (17-deacetyl)norgestimate.

14. A method of Claim 1 which comprises administering to a female of child bearing age consecutively over a 28 day cycle:

- a) a first phase of 21 daily dosage units of a progestational agent equal in progestational activity to about 35 to about 100 µg levonorgestrel;
- b) a second phase of 3 daily dosage units of an antiprogesterin compound of Claim 1, each daily dosage unit containing an antiprogesterin compound at a daily dosage of from about 2 to 50 mg; and
- c) optionally, 4 daily dosage units of an orally and pharmaceutically acceptable placebo to be administered on each day of the 28-day cycle following the first phase and second phase.

15. A method of contraception which comprises administering to a female of child bearing age over a period of 28 consecutive days:

- a) a first phase of from 18 to 21 daily dosage units of a progestostational agent equal in progestational activity to about 35 to about 150 µg levonorgestrel, and ethinyl estradiol at a daily dose range of from about 10 to about 35 µg; and
- b) a second phase of from 1 to 7 daily dosage units of an antiprogesterin of Claim 1 at a daily dose of from about 2 to 50 mg; and
- c) optionally, an orally and pharmaceutically acceptable placebo for each remaining day of the 28 consecutive days.

16. A method of contraception of Claim 15 which comprises administering to a female of child bearing age over a period of 28 consecutive days:

- 126 -

- a) a first phase of 21 daily dosage units of a progestostational agent equal in progestational activity to about 35 to about 100 µg levonorgestrel and ethinyl estradiol at a daily dose range of from about 10 to about 35 µg; and
- b) a second phase of 3 daily dosage units of an antiprogesterin of Claim 1 at a daily dose of from about 2 to 50 mg; and
- c) optionally, a third phase of 4 daily dosage units of an orally and pharmaceutically acceptable placebo.

17. A method of contraception which comprises administering to a female of child bearing age over a period of 28 consecutive days:

- a) a first phase of from 18 to 21 daily dosage units containing a progestational agent at a daily dose equal in progestational activity to from about 35 to about 150 µg levonorgestrel and ethinyl estradiol at a daily dose range of from about 10 to about 35 µg
- b) a second phase of from 1 to 7 daily dose units, each daily dose unit containing an antiprogesterin of Claim 1 at a concentration of from 2 to 50 mg and ethinyl estradiol at a concentration of from about 10 to about 35 µg; and
- c) optionally, a third phase of daily dosage units of an orally and pharmaceutically acceptable placebo, the total of the daily dosage units being 28.

18. A method of contraception of Claim 17 which comprises administering to a female of child bearing age over a period of 28 consecutive days:

- a) a first phase of 21 daily dosage units, each daily dosage unit containing a progestational agent at a daily dose equal in progestational activity to about 35 to about 100 µg levonorgestrel and ethinyl estradiol at a daily dose range of from about 10 to about 35 µg
- b) a second phase of 3 daily dose, each daily dose unit containing an antiprogesterin of Claim 1 at a concentration of from 2 to 50 mg; and ethinyl estradiol at a concentration of from about 10 to about 35 µg; and

- 127 -

c) optionally, a third phase of 4 daily dosage units of an orally and pharmaceutically acceptable placebo.

19. A pharmaceutically useful kit adapted for daily oral administration which comprises:

- a) a first phase of from 14 to 21 daily dosage units of a progestational agent equal in progestational activity to about 35 to about 150 µg levonorgestrel;
- b) a second phase of from 1 to 11 daily dosage units of an antiprogestin compound of Claim 1, each daily dosage unit containing an antiprogestin compound at a daily dosage of from about 2 to 50 mg; and
- c) a third phase of daily dosage units of an orally and pharmaceutically acceptable placebo;

wherein the total number of the daily dosage units in the first phase, second phase and third phase equals 28.

20. A pharmaceutically useful kit adapted for daily oral administration of Claim 19 which comprises:

- a) a first phase of 21 daily dosage units of a progestational agent equal in progestational activity to about 35 to about 150 µg levonorgestrel;
- b) a second phase of 3 daily dosage units of an antiprogestin compound of Claim 1, each daily dosage unit containing an antiprogestin compound at a daily dosage of from about 2 to 50 mg; and
- c) a third phase of 4 daily dosage units of an orally and pharmaceutically acceptable placebo.

21. A pharmaceutically useful kit adapted for daily oral administration which comprises:

- 128 -

- a) a first phase of from 18 to 21 daily dosage units of a progestostational agent equal in progestational activity to about 35 to about 150 µg levonorgestrel and ethinyl estradiol at a daily dose range of from about 10 to about 35 µg; and
 - b) a second phase of from 1 to 7 daily dosage units of an antiprogestin of Claim 1 at a daily dose of from about 2 to 50 mg; and
 - c) a third phase of from 0 to 9 daily dosage units of an orally and pharmaceutically acceptable placebo;
- wherein the total number of the daily dosage units in the first phase, second phase and third phase equals 28.

22. A pharmaceutically useful kit adapted for daily oral administration of Claim 21 which comprises:

- a) a first phase of 21 daily dosage units of a progestostational agent equal in progestational activity to about 35 to about 150 µg levonorgestrel and ethinyl estradiol at a daily dose range of from about 10 to about 35 µg; and
- b) a second phase of three daily dosage units of an antiprogestin of Claim 1 administered at a daily dose of from about 2 to 50 mg; and
- c) a third phase of 4 daily dosage units of an orally and pharmaceutically acceptable placebo.

23. A pharmaceutically useful kit adapted for daily oral administration which comprises:

- a) a first phase of from 18 to 21 daily dosage units, each daily dosage unit comprising a progestational agent at a daily dose equal in progestational activity to from about 35 to about 150 µg levonorgestrel and ethinyl estradiol at a daily dose range of from about 10 to about 35 µg
- b) a second phase of from 1 to 7 daily dose units, each daily dose unit containing an antiprogestin of Claim 1 at a concentration of from 2 to 50 mg; and ethinyl estradiol at a concentration of from about 10 to about 35 µg; and

- 129 -

c) a third phase of from 0 to 9 daily dosage units of an orally and pharmaceutically acceptable placebo;

wherein the total number of the daily dosage units in the first phase, second phase and third phase equals 28.

24. A pharmaceutically useful kit adapted for daily oral administration of Claim 21 which comprises:

a) a first phase of 21 daily dosage units, each containing a progestational agent of this invention at a daily dose equal in progestational activity to about 35 to about 150 μ g levonorgestrel and ethinyl estradiol at a daily dose range of from about 10 to about 35 μ g

b) a second phase of 3 daily dose units, each daily dose unit containing an antiprogestin of Claim 1 at a concentration of from 2 to 50 mg; and ethinyl estradiol at a concentration of from about 10 to about 35 μ g; and

c) a third phase of 4 daily dosage units of an orally and pharmaceutically acceptable placebo.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No
PCT/US 00/11834

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 7 A61K45/06 A61P15/18 //A61K31/57,31:40,31:565

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 7 A61K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

EPO-Internal, WPI Data, PAJ, EMBASE, MEDLINE, SCISEARCH, BIOSIS, CHEM ABS Data

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	DE 43 30 234 A (SCHERING AG) 9 March 1995 (1995-03-09) column 1, line 1 - line 30 claims 1-8 ---	1-24
A	WO 96 15794 A (BALANCE PHARMACEUTICALS INC) 30 May 1996 (1996-05-30) page 6, line 15 -page 7, line 23 ---	1-24
A	WO 97 49407 A (AKZO NOBEL NV ;COELINGH BENNINK HERMAN JAN TI (NL); VERBOST PIETER) 31 December 1997 (1997-12-31) page 2, line 29 -page 3, line 6 ---	1-24
A	US 5 521 166 A (GRUBB GARY S) 28 May 1996 (1996-05-28) claim 1 column 2, line 41 - line 60 ---	1-24
-/--		

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

* Special categories of cited documents :

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date

"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)

"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art

"&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

28 August 2000

Date of mailing of the international search report

05/09/2000

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Bonzano, C

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No
PCT/US 00/11834

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	US 5 733 902 A (SCHNEIDER MARTIN) 31 March 1998 (1998-03-31) column 1, line 13 - line 19 -----	1-24
A	DE 43 44 463 A (SCHERING AG) 29 June 1995 (1995-06-29) page 2, line 1 - line 16 -----	1-24

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

Continuation of Box I.2

Present claims 1-3,13-24 relate to an extremely large number of possible compounds. Support within the meaning of Article 6 PCT and/or disclosure within the meaning of Article 5 PCT is to be found, however, for only a very small proportion of the compounds claimed. In the present case, the claims so lack support, and the application so lacks disclosure, that a meaningful search over the whole of the claimed scope is impossible. Present claims 1,5-12,14-24 relate to a compound defined by reference to a desirable characteristic or property, namely the activity as progestational.

The claims cover all compounds having this characteristic or property, whereas the application provides support within the meaning of Article 6 PCT and/or disclosure within the meaning of Article 5 PCT for only a very limited number of such compounds. In the present case, the claims so lack support, and the application so lacks disclosure, that a meaningful search over the whole of the claimed scope is impossible. Independent of the above reasoning, the claims also lack clarity (Article 6 PCT). An attempt is made to define the compound by reference to a result to be achieved. Again, this lack of clarity in the present case is such as to render a meaningful search over the whole of the claimed scope impossible.

Consequently, the search has been carried out for those parts of the claims which appear to be supported and disclosed, namely those parts relating to the combinations of the progestationals and the antiprogestinics explicitly mentioned in the claims, with due regard to the general idea underlying the present invention.

Claims searched completely: 4.

Claims searched incompletely: 1-3,5-24.

The applicant's attention is drawn to the fact that claims, or parts of claims, relating to inventions in respect of which no international search report has been established need not be the subject of an international preliminary examination (Rule 66.1(e) PCT). The applicant is advised that the EPO policy when acting as an International Preliminary Examining Authority is normally not to carry out a preliminary examination on matter which has not been searched. This is the case irrespective of whether or not the claims are amended following receipt of the search report or during any Chapter II procedure.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/US 00/11834

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
DE 4330234 A	09-03-1995	NONE	
WO 9615794 A	30-05-1996	CA 2205897 A EP 0792152 A	30-05-1996 03-09-1997
WO 9749407 A	31-12-1997	AU 3436097 A BR 9709934 A CZ 9804289 A EP 0912186 A NO 986104 A NZ 332894 A PL 330916 A	14-01-1998 10-08-1999 11-08-1999 06-05-1999 23-12-1998 28-05-1999 07-06-1999
US 5521166 A	28-05-1996	AU 711179 B AU 4473096 A CA 2208007 A EP 0799043 A JP 10513152 T WO 9619227 A	07-10-1999 10-07-1996 27-06-1996 08-10-1997 15-12-1998 27-06-1996
US 5733902 A	31-03-1998	DE 3733478 A AT 83149 T AT 106730 T AU 2332188 A AU 2332288 A CA 1330039 A CA 1329126 A DE 3850026 D DE 3876582 A DK 550088 A DK 550188 A EP 0310541 A EP 0310542 A ES 2053795 T ES 2055745 T GR 3007225 T IE 65165 B IE 66335 B IL 87885 A IL 87886 A JP 1106823 A JP 2620333 B JP 1106822 A JP 2656958 B PH 26774 A US 4888331 A ZA 8807378 A ZA 8807379 A	13-04-1989 15-12-1992 15-06-1994 20-04-1989 08-06-1989 07-06-1994 03-05-1994 06-07-1995 21-01-1993 02-04-1989 02-04-1989 05-04-1989 05-04-1989 01-08-1994 01-09-1994 30-07-1993 04-10-1995 27-12-1995 10-06-1993 10-06-1993 24-04-1989 11-06-1997 24-04-1989 24-09-1997 28-09-1992 19-12-1989 30-05-1989 30-05-1989
DE 4344463 A	29-06-1995	WO 9517193 A EP 0735882 A JP 9510183 T	29-06-1995 09-10-1996 14-10-1997